

Homological Algebra

With Applications to Algebraic Topology

Angus Rush

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \cdots \rightarrow & \ker f & \cdots \rightarrow & \ker g & \cdots \rightarrow & \ker h \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{m} & B & \xrightarrow{e} \twoheadrightarrow & C \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A' & \xrightarrow{m'} & B' & \xrightarrow{e'} \twoheadrightarrow & C' \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & \text{coker } f & \cdots \rightarrow & \text{coker } g & \cdots \rightarrow & \text{coker } h \cdots \rightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

Dashed arrows indicate commutativity: $A \xrightarrow{f} A'$, $B \xrightarrow{g} B'$, $C \xrightarrow{h} C'$, $A' \xrightarrow{f} \text{coker } f$, $B' \xrightarrow{g} \text{coker } g$, $C' \xrightarrow{h} \text{coker } h$, and a curved arrow from C to $\text{coker } f$.

Contents

I. Homological algebra	7
1. Introduction	9
1.1. Motivation	9
1.1.1. Exactness	12
1.1.2. Tensor products	13
1.1.3. Projective and injective modules	13
2. Abelian categories	15
2.1. Basics	15
2.1.1. Building blocks	15
2.1.2. Abelian categories	20
2.1.3. Abelian-ness is a property, not a structure	21
2.2. Embedding theorems	22
3. Homological algebra in abelian categories	27
3.1. Chain complexes	27
3.2. Homology	29
3.3. Diagram lemmas	31
3.3.1. The splitting lemma	31
3.3.2. The snake lemma	32
3.3.3. The long exact sequence on homology	36
3.3.4. The five lemma	38
3.3.5. The nine lemma	40
3.4. Exact functors	41
3.4.1. Exactness and preservation of (co)limits	42
3.4.2. Exactness of the hom functor and tensor products	44
3.5. Quasi-isomorphism	46
3.6. Chain Homotopies	46
3.7. Projectives and injectives	47
3.8. The homotopy category	52
3.9. Mapping cones	53
3.10. Localization at weak equivalences: a love story	56
3.11. Double complexes	61
3.12. Tensor-hom adjunction for chain complexes	66

3.13. The Künneth formula	67
4. Tor and ext	69
4.1. The Tor functor	69
4.2. Ext and extensions	71
4.2.1. The Baer sum	78
5. Basic applications	81
5.1. Syzygy theorem	81
5.2. Quiver representations	81
5.3. Group (co)homology	84
5.3.1. The Dold-Kan correspondence	85
5.3.2. The bar construction	87
5.3.3. Invariants and coinvariants	90
5.3.4. The bar construction for group rings	94
5.3.5. Computations in low degrees	98
5.3.6. Periodicity in group homology	104
6. Spectral sequences	107
6.1. Motivation	107
6.2. Homology spectral sequences	110
6.2.1. Notation and terminology	110
6.2.2. Stabilization and convergence	112
6.2.3. Exact couples	114
6.2.4. The spectral sequence of a filtered complex	114
6.3. The spectral sequence of a double complex	117
6.4. Hyper-derived functors	120
6.4.1. Cartan-Eilenberg resolutions	120
6.4.2. Hyper-derived functors	124
7. Triangulated categories	129
 II. Algebraic topology	 131
8. Homology	133
8.1. Basic definitions and examples	133
8.2. The Hurewicz homomorphism	134
8.3. Homotopy equivalence	134
8.4. Relative homology; the long exact sequence of a pair of spaces	135
8.5. Barycentric subdivision	136
8.5.1. Excision	137
8.5.2. The Mayer-Vietoris sequence	138

8.5.3. The relative Mayer-Vietoris sequence	141
8.6. Reduced homology	143
8.7. Mapping degree	145
8.8. CW Complexes	146
8.9. Cellular homology	149
8.10. Homology with coefficients	153
8.11. The topological Künneth formula	153
8.12. The Eilenberg-Steenrod axioms	155
9. Cohomology	157
9.1. Axiomatic description of a cohomology theory	157
9.2. Singular cohomology	158
9.3. The cap product	159

Part I.

Homological algebra

1. Introduction

1.1. Motivation

Homological algebra is about chain complexes.

Definition 1 (chain complex). Let R be a ring.¹ A chain complex of R -modules, denoted (C_\bullet, d) , consists of the following data:

- For each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, an R -module C_n , and
- R -linear maps $d_n: C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$, called the *differentials*,

such that the differentials satisfy the relation

$$d_{n-1} \circ d_n = 0.$$

Example 2 (Syzygies). Let $R = \mathbb{C}[x_1, \dots, x_k]$. Following Hilbert, we consider a finitely generated² R -module M . The ring R is Noetherian, so by Hilbert's basis theorem, M is Noetherian, hence has finitely many generators a_1, \dots, a_k .

Denote by R^k the free R -module with k generators, and consider

$$\phi: R^k \rightarrow M; \quad e_i \mapsto a_i.$$

This map is surjective, but it may have a kernel, called the *module of first Syzygies*, denoted $\text{Syz}^1(M)$. This kernel consists of those x such that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i e_i \xrightarrow{\phi} \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i a_i = 0.$$

This kernel is again a module, the module of relations.

By Hilbert's basis theorem (since polynomial rings over a field are Noetherian), $\text{Syz}^1(M)$ is again a finitely generated R -module. Hence, pick finite set of generators b_i , $1 \leq i \leq \ell$, and look at

$$R^\ell \rightarrow \text{Syz}^1(M); \quad e_i \mapsto b_i.$$

In general, there is non-trivial kernel, denoted $\text{Syz}^2(M)$. This consists of relation be-

¹Associative, with unit. Not necessarily commutative.

²i.e. expressible as an R -linear combination of finitely many generators.

1. Introduction

tween relations.

We can keep going. This gives us a sequence $\text{Syz}^\bullet(M)$ corresponding to relations between relations between...between relations.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \text{Syz}^2(M) & & & & \\
 & \nearrow & & \searrow & & & \\
 \cdots & \nearrow & R^m & \xrightarrow{d} & R^l & \xrightarrow{d} & R^k \longrightarrow M \\
 & \nwarrow & & & \searrow & & \\
 & & \text{Syz}^3 & & \text{Syz}^1(M) & &
 \end{array}$$

From this we build a chain complex (C_\bullet, d) , where C_n corresponds to the n th copy of R^k , known as the *free resolution* of M .

Hilbert's Syzygy theorem tells us that every finitely generated $\mathbb{C}[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ -module admits a free resolution of length at most n .

Example 3 (simplicial complexes). Let $N \geq 0$. A collection $K \subset \mathcal{P}(\{0, \dots, n\})$ of subsets is called a *simplicial complex* if it is closed under the taking of subsets in the sense that if for all $\sigma \in K$,

$$\tau \subset \sigma \implies \tau \in K.$$

For every $n \geq 0$, we define the n -simplices of K to be the set

$$K_n = \{\sigma \in K \mid |\sigma| = n + 1\}.$$

Every $\sigma \in K_n$ can be expressed uniquely as $\sigma = \{x_0, \dots, x_n\}$, with $x_0 < \dots < x_n$. Define the i th face of σ to be

$$\partial_i \sigma = \{x_0, \dots, x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_n\}.$$

Let R be a ring. Define

$$C_n(K, R) = \bigoplus_{\sigma \in K_n} R_{e_\sigma},$$

where the subscripts are simply labels. Further, define

$$d: C_n(K, R) \rightarrow C_{n-1}(K, R); \quad e_\sigma \mapsto \sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i e_{\partial_i \sigma}.$$

This is a complex because...

Example 4. Let k be a field, and A an associative k -algebra. We define a complex of vector spaces

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{d} A^{\otimes n} \xrightarrow{d} \cdots \xrightarrow{d} A^{\otimes 3} \xrightarrow{d} A \otimes A \xrightarrow{d} A,$$

where d is defined by the formula

$$d(a_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (-1)^i a_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_i a_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes a_n + (-1)^n a_n a_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes a_{n-1}.$$

This complex is known as the *cyclic bar complex*.

Definition 5 (cycle, boundary, homology). Let (C_\bullet, d) be a chain complex. We make the following definitions.

- The space $\ker d_m$ is known as the space of n -cycles, and denoted $Z_n(C_\bullet)$.
- The space $\operatorname{im} d_{m+1}$ is known as the space of n -boundaries, and denoted $B_n(C_\bullet)$.
- The space

$$\frac{Z_n}{B_n} = H_n(C_\bullet)$$

is known as the n th homology of C .

Definition 6 (exact). We say that a chain complex (C_\bullet, d) is exact at $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ if $H_n(C_\bullet) = 0$.

Definition 7 (exact sequence). We say that a sequence

$$C_k \xrightarrow{d} C_{k-1} \xrightarrow{d} \cdots \xrightarrow{d} C_\ell$$

with $d^2 = 0$ is exact if it is exact at $k-1, k-2, \dots, \ell+1$.

Definition 8 (short exact sequence). A short exact sequence is an exact sequence of the form

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0.$$

Equivalently, such a sequence is exact if

- f is a monomorphism
- g is an epimorphism
- $H_B = 0$.

Example 9.

- The sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\times 2} \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\pi} \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact.

- The sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\times 2} \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\pi} \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0$$

1. Introduction

is not exact since the map $x \mapsto 2x$ is not injective.

- The sequence

$$\mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\times 2} \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\pi} \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact.

1.1.1. Exactness

Proposition 10. Let R be a ring, and M a left R -module. Then both the hom functors

$$\text{Hom}(M, -), \quad \text{Hom}(-, M)$$

are left exact.

Proof. Let

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0$$

be an exact sequence. First, we show that $\text{Hom}(M, A)$ is exact, i.e. that

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{Hom}(M, A) \xrightarrow{f_*} \text{Hom}(M, B) \xrightarrow{g_*} \text{Hom}(M, C)$$

is an exact sequence of abelian groups.

First, we show that f_* is injective. To see this, let $\alpha: M \rightarrow A$ such that $f_*(\alpha) = 0$. By definition, $f_*(\alpha) = f \circ \alpha$, and

$$f \circ \alpha = 0 \implies \alpha = 0$$

because f is a monomorphism.

Similarly, $\text{im } f \subseteq \ker g$ because

$$(g_* \circ f_*)(\beta) = g \circ f \circ \beta = 0.$$

It remains only to check that $\ker g \subseteq \text{im } f$. To this end, let $\gamma: M \rightarrow B$ such that $g_*\gamma = 0$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & M & & & \\ & & \swarrow \exists! \delta & \downarrow \gamma & \searrow 0 & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{g} & C \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

Then $\text{im } \gamma \subseteq \ker g = \text{im } f$, so γ factors through A ; that is to say, there exists a $\delta: M \rightarrow A$ such that $f_*\delta = \gamma$. \square

This theorem is a shadow of a much, much stronger result: Exactness of functor $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow$

\mathcal{B} between abelian categories is a consequence of preservation of certain (co)limits. More concretely, we have the following.

1.1.2. Tensor products

Definition 11 (tensor product). Let R be a (not necessarily commutative) ring M a right R -module, and N a left R -module. The tensor product $M \otimes_R N$ satisfies the following universal property...

Even for modules over non-commutative rings, we have the following version of tensor-hom adjunction.

Proposition 12. Let R be a ring, M a right R -module, and N a left R -module. There is an adjunction

$$- \otimes_R N : \mathbf{Mod}\text{-}R \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Ab} : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(N, -).$$

Proof. We show that there is a natural bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(M \otimes_R N, P) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(M, \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Mod}\text{-}R}(N, P)).$$

□

1.1.3. Projective and injective modules

Definition 13 (projective, injective module). Let R be a ring. An R -module M is said to be projective if the functor $\mathrm{Hom}(P, -)$ is exact, and injective if the functor $\mathrm{Hom}(-, P)$ is exact.

We know (from [Proposition 10](#)) that the hom functor is left exact in both slots. Therefore, we have the following immediate classification of projective objects.

Proposition 14. An R -module P is projective if and only if for every for every epimorphism $g: B \twoheadrightarrow C$ and every morphism $p: P \rightarrow C$, there exists a morphism $\tilde{p}: P \rightarrow B$ such that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & P & \\ \exists \tilde{p} \swarrow & \downarrow p & \\ B & \xrightarrow{g} & C \end{array}$$

Similarly, a module Q is injective if for every monomorphism $A \hookrightarrow B$ and map $g: A \rightarrow$

1. Introduction

Q , there exists a homomorphism \tilde{q} such that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ p \downarrow & \swarrow \exists \tilde{p} & \\ Q & & \end{array}$$

Proof. In the projective case, this condition precisely encodes the condition that f_* is an epimorphism; in the projective case, \square

Proposition 15. Let R be a ring. A module P is projective if and only if it is a direct summand of a free module, i.e. if there exists an R -module M and a free R -module F such that

$$F \simeq P \oplus M.$$

Proof. First, suppose that P is projective. We can always express P in terms of a set of generators and relations. Denote by F the free R -module over the generators, and consider the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker \pi \hookrightarrow F \xrightarrow{\pi} P \longrightarrow 0$$

An easy consequence of the splitting lemma is that any short exact sequence with a projective in the final spot splits, so

$$F \simeq P \oplus \ker \pi$$

as required.

Conversely, suppose that $P \oplus M \simeq F$, for F free, and P and M arbitrary. Certainly, the following lifting problem has a solution (by lifting generators).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & P \oplus M & \\ \exists(j,k) \swarrow & \downarrow (f,g) & \\ N & \longrightarrow & M \end{array}$$

In particular, this gives us the following solution to our lifting problem,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & P & \\ \exists j \swarrow & \downarrow f & \\ N & \longrightarrow & M \end{array}$$

exhibiting P as projective. \square

2. Abelian categories

2.1. Basics

In this chapter we recall some basic results.

2.1.1. Building blocks

Additive categories

Definition 16 (Ab-enriched category). A category \mathcal{C} is called **Ab-enriched** if it is enriched over the symmetric monoidal category $(\mathbf{Ab}, \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}})$.

Definition 17 (additive category). A category \mathcal{C} is additive if it has products and is Ab-enriched.

Proposition 18. Let \mathcal{C} be an additive category. Then the product $A \times B$ satisfies the universal property for a coproduct $A \amalg B$.

Proof. By the universal property for products, we get a unique map $i_A: A \rightarrow A \times B$ making the following diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & A & & \\ & \swarrow \text{id}_A & \downarrow \exists! i_A & \searrow 0 & \\ A & \xleftarrow{\pi_A} & A \times B & \xrightarrow{\pi_B} & B \end{array}$$

Similarly, there exists a unique map $i_B: B \rightarrow A \times B$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & B & & \\ & \swarrow 0 & \downarrow \exists! i_B & \searrow \text{id}_B & \\ A & \xleftarrow{\pi_A} & A \times B & \xrightarrow{\pi_B} & B \end{array}$$

commute.

2. Abelian categories

Consider the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & A \times B & & \\
 & \swarrow \pi_A & \downarrow \exists! & \searrow \pi_B & \\
 A & \xleftarrow{\pi_A} & A \times B & \xrightarrow{\pi_B} & B
 \end{array}$$

Obviously, the identity map $\text{id}_{A \times B}$ makes this diagram commute. However

$$\pi_A \circ (i_A \circ \pi_A + i_B \circ \pi_B) = \pi_A$$

and

$$\pi_B \circ (i_A \circ \pi_A + i_B \circ \pi_B) = \pi_B,$$

so the map $i_A \circ \pi_A + i_B \circ \pi_B$ also does. Thus,

$$\pi_A \circ i_A + \pi_B \circ i_B = \text{id}_{A \times B}.$$

We now claim that $A \times B$, together with the maps i_A and i_B , satisfy the universal property for coproducts. To see this, let X be an object and $f: A \rightarrow X$ and $g: B \rightarrow X$ be morphisms.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{i_A} & A \times B & \xleftarrow{i_B} & B \\
 & \searrow f & \downarrow \phi & \swarrow g & \\
 & & X & &
 \end{array}$$

We need to show that there exists a unique morphism ϕ making the diagram commute. Note that, by logic identical to that above, taking

$$\phi = f \circ \pi_A + g \circ \pi_B$$

makes the above diagram commute. Now suppose that there exists another $\tilde{\phi}$ making the diagram commute. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{\phi} &= \tilde{\phi} \circ \text{id}_{A \times B} \\
 &= \tilde{\phi} \circ (i_A \circ \pi_A + i_B \circ \pi_B) \\
 &= f \circ \pi_A + g \circ \pi_B \\
 &= \phi.
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Proposition 18 tells us that, in an additive category with products, we also have coproducts, and that these agree with the products. Dually, we could have defined an additive category to be a category with coproducts; the dual to **Proposition 18** would then have shown us that these agreed with products. Rather than preferencing either the notation

for products or the notation for coproducts, we will use a new symbol.

Definition 19 (direct sum). Let \mathcal{C} be a category with a zero object 0 , and products and coproducts. If products and coproducts agree in the sense that the canonical map $A \amalg B \rightarrow A \times B$ is an isomorphism. Then we say that \mathcal{C} has direct sums, and denote the product/coproduct of A and B by $A \oplus B$.

Definition 20 (additive functor). Let $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor between additive categories. We say that F is additive if for each $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ the map

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), F(Y))$$

is a homomorphism of abelian groups.

Lemma 21. Let A and B be objects in an additive category \mathcal{A} , and let X be an object in \mathcal{A} equipped with morphisms as follows,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & & A \\ & \searrow i_A & \nearrow \pi_A \\ & X & \\ & \nearrow i_B & \searrow \pi_B \\ B & & B \end{array}$$

such that the following equations hold.

$$\begin{aligned} i_A \circ \pi_A + i_B \circ \pi_B &= \text{id}_X \\ \pi_A \circ i_B &= 0 = \pi_B \circ i_A \\ \pi_A \circ i_A &= \text{id}_A \\ \pi_B \circ i_B &= \text{id}_B \end{aligned}$$

Then the π s and i s exhibit $X \cong A \oplus B$.

Proof. It suffices to show that X is a product of A and B . Let $f: Z \rightarrow A$ and $g: Z \rightarrow B$. We need to show that there exists a unique $\phi: Z \rightarrow X$ making the following diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Z & & \\ & \searrow f & \downarrow \phi & \swarrow g & \\ A & \xleftarrow{\pi_A} & X & \xrightarrow{\pi_B} & B \end{array}$$

That is, we need

$$\pi_A \circ \phi = f, \quad \pi_B \circ \phi = g.$$

2. Abelian categories

Thus, we need

$$\begin{aligned} i_A \circ f + \pi_B \circ g &= i_A \circ \pi_A \circ \phi + i_B \circ \pi_B \circ \phi \\ &= \phi. \end{aligned}$$

It is easy to check that ϕ defined in this way *does* make the diagram commute, so ϕ exists and is unique. \square

Corollary 22. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be an additive functor between additive categories. Then F preserves direct sums in the sense that there is a natural isomorphism

$$F(A \oplus B) \simeq F(A) \oplus F(B).$$

Conversely, if F preserves products,

Proof. Apply F to the data of [Lemma 21](#). \square

Pre-abelian categories

Definition 23 (kernel, cokernel). Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in an abelian category.

- A pair (K, ι) , where $\iota: K \rightarrow A$ is a morphism, is a kernel of f if $f \circ \iota = 0$ and for every object X and morphism $g: X \rightarrow A$ such that $f \circ g = 0$, there exists a unique morphism $\alpha: X \rightarrow K$ such that $f \circ \alpha = 0$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & X & & \\ & \swarrow \exists! & \downarrow g & \searrow 0 & \\ K & \xrightarrow{\iota} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ & \searrow & \downarrow 0 & \swarrow & \\ & & 0 & & \end{array}$$

- A pair (C, π) , where $\pi: B \rightarrow C$ is a morphism, is a cokernel of f if $\pi \circ f = 0$ and for every object Y and morphism $g: B \rightarrow Y$ such that $g \circ f = 0$, there exists a unique morphism $\beta: C \rightarrow Y$ such that $\beta \circ \pi = 0$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & 0 & & \\ & \searrow & \downarrow 0 & \swarrow & \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{\pi} & C \\ & \swarrow 0 & \downarrow g & \searrow \exists! & \\ & & Y & & \end{array}$$

Here are some equivalent ways of defining the kernel of a morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$.

- The equalizer of f with the zero map.

$$\ker f = \text{eq} \longrightarrow A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{f} \\ \xrightarrow{0} \end{array} B$$

- The pullback along the zero morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \ker f & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

Definition 24 (pre-abelian category). A pre-abelian category is an additive category such that every morphism has a kernel and a cokernel.

Lemma 25. Pre-abelian categories have all finite limits and colimits.

Proof. In a pre-abelian category, the equalizer of f and g is the kernel of $f - g$, and the coequalizer is the cokernel of $f - g$. Thus, pre-abelian categories have finite products and equalizers, and finite coproducts and coequalizers. \square

Proposition 26. In a pre-abelian category, kernels are monic and cokernels are epic.

Proof. The kernel of $f: A \rightarrow B$ is the pullback of the morphism $0 \rightarrow B$, which is monic. The pullback of a monic is a monic, which gives the result. \square

Proposition 27. Let \mathcal{C} be a pre-abelian category, and let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism.

1. The morphism f is a monomorphism if and only if $\ker f = 0$.
2. The morphism f is an epimorphism if and only if $\text{coker } f = 0$.

Proof.

1. Suppose f is a monomorphism, and consider a morphism g making the following diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Z & & \\ & & \downarrow g & \searrow 0 & \\ \ker f & \xrightarrow{\iota} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

Because f is a monomorphism, we have $g = 0$. By the universal property for kernels, there exists a unique map $Z \rightarrow \ker f$ making the above diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Z & & \\ & \swarrow \exists! & \downarrow g & \searrow 0 & \\ \ker f & \xrightarrow{\iota} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

2. Abelian categories

But this remains true if we replace $\ker f$ by 0, so by definition we must have $\ker f = 0$.

Now suppose that $\ker f = 0$, and let $g: X \rightarrow A$ such that $f \circ g = 0$. The universal property guarantees us a morphism $\alpha: X \rightarrow K$ making the left-hand triangle below commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Z & & \\ & \swarrow \exists! & \downarrow g & \searrow 0 & \\ \ker f = 0 & \xrightarrow{\iota} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

However, the only way the left-hand triangle can commute is if $g = 0$. Thus, f is mono.

2. Dual.

□

2.1.2. Abelian categories

We have seen that in a pre-abelian category, kernels and cokernels more or less behave as they do in the category of modules over some ring R . However, the first isomorphism theorem tells us that every submodule is the kernel of some module homomorphism (namely the cokernel), and every quotient module of some module homomorphism (namely the kernel).

Definition 28 (abelian category). A pre-abelian category is said to be abelian if every monomorphism is the kernel of its cokernel, and every epimorphism is the cokernel of its kernel.

Proposition 29. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, and let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in \mathcal{A} . Then f is an isomorphism if and only if $\ker f = 0$ and $\operatorname{coker} f = 0$.

Proof. If f is an isomorphism, then it is mono and epi, and we are done by [Proposition 27](#).

Conversely, if $\ker f = 0$ and $\operatorname{coker} f = 0$, then f is mono and epi. We need only to show that any morphism in an abelian category which is monic and epic is an isomorphism.

Let f be monic and epic. Then f is the kernel of its cokernel and the cokernel of its kernel, and both of these are zero.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & B & & & \\ & & \swarrow \exists! f_R^{-1} & \parallel & \searrow 0 & & \\ \ker f = 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \longrightarrow & 0 = \operatorname{coker} f \\ & \nwarrow 0 & \parallel & \swarrow \exists! f_L^{-1} & & & \\ & & A & & & & \end{array}$$

This gives us morphisms f_L^{-1} and f_R^{-1} such that

$$f \circ f_R^{-1} = \text{id}_A, \quad f_L^{-1} \circ f = \text{id}_B.$$

The usual trick shows that $f_L^{-1} = f_R^{-1}$. □

As the following proposition shows, additive functors from additive categories preserve direct sums.

Example 30. Once it is known that a category \mathcal{A} is abelian, a number of other categories are immediately known to be abelian.

- The category $\text{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ of chain complexes in \mathcal{A} is abelian, as we will see in
- For any small category I , the category $\text{Fun}(I, \mathcal{A})$ of I -diagrams in \mathcal{A} is abelian.

2.1.3. Abelian-ness is a property, not a structure

Our definition of an abelian category, namely an **Ab**-enriched category with products, kernels, and cokernels, such that every monomorphism is the kernel of its cokernel and every epimorphism is the cokernel of its kernel, makes it sound like ordinary categories could never aspire to be abelian categories. After all, in an ordinary category, one has to provide extra structure, namely an addition law on morphisms, to get an **Ab**-enriched category.

Not so! It turns out that demanding that finite products and coproducts exist and agree is sufficient to specify the addition law.

Proposition 31. Let \mathcal{C} be a category with finite direct sums¹ (Definition 19). Then \mathcal{C} has a canonical **Ab**-enrichment.

Proof. Let $A \in \mathcal{C}$ be an object. Denote the diagonal map $A \rightarrow A \oplus A$ by Δ , and the codiagonal map $A \oplus A \rightarrow A$ by ∇ . Let $f, g: A \rightarrow B$. We define

$$f + g = \nabla \circ (f \oplus g) \circ \Delta.$$

To see that this is an **Ab**-enrichment, note the following.

1. With 0 the zero morphism, we have

$$f + 0$$

□

¹Including 0-ary direct sums, i.e. a zero object.

2. Abelian categories

In fact, in an abelian category, the **Ab**-enrichment is completely determined by the direct sum structure. Thus, we have the following.

Corollary 32. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a functor between abelian categories. Then F is additive if and only if it preserves direct sums.

2.2. Embedding theorems

In ordinary category theory, when manipulating a locally small category it is often helpful to pass through the Yoneda embedding, which gives a (fully) faithful rendition of the category under consideration in the category **Set**. One of the reasons that this is so useful is that the category **Set** has a lot of structure which can use to prove things about the subcategory of **Set** in which one lands. Having done this, one can then use the fully faithfulness to translate results to the category under consideration.

This sort of procedure, namely embedding a category which is difficult to work with into one with more desirable properties and then translating results back and forth, is very powerful. In the context of (small) Abelian categories one has essentially the best possible such embedding, known as the Freyd-Mitchell embedding theorem, which we will revisit at the end of this section. However, for now we will content ourselves with a simpler categorical embedding, one which we can work with easily.

In abelian categories, one can define kernels and cokernels slickly, as for example the equalizer along the zero morphism. However, in full generality, we can define both kernels and cokernels in any category with a zero object: f is a kernel for g if and only if the diagram below is a pullback, and a g is a cokernel of f if and only if the diagram below is a pullback.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & C \end{array}$$

This means that kernels and cokernels are very general, as categories with zero objects are a dime a dozen. For example, the category **Set**_{*} of pointed sets has the singleton $\{*\}$ as a zero object. This means that one can speak of the kernel or the cokernel of a map between pointed sets, and talk about an exact sequence of such maps.

Given an abelian category \mathcal{A} , suppose one could find an embedding $\mathcal{H}: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}_*$ which reflected exactness in the sense that if one started with a sequence $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ in \mathcal{A} , mapped it into **Set**_{*} finding a sequence $\mathcal{H}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}(C)$, and found that this sequence was exact, one could be sure that $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ had been exact to begin with. Then every time one wanted to check the exactness of a sequence, one could embed that sequence in **Set**_{*} using \mathcal{H} and check exactness there. Effectively, one could check exactness of a sequence in \mathcal{A} by manipulating the objects making up the sequence as if

they had elements.

Or, suppose one could find an embedding as above which sent only zero morphisms to zero morphisms. Then one could check that a diagram commutes (equivalently, that the difference between any two different ways of getting between objects is equal to 0) by checking that the image of the diagram under our functor \mathcal{H} commutes.

In fact, for \mathcal{A} small, we will find a functor which satisfies both of these and more. Then, just as we are feeling pretty good about ourselves, we will state the Freyd-Mitchell embedding theorem, which blows our pitiful result out of the water.

We now construct our functor to \mathbf{Set}_* .

Definition 33 (category of contravariant epimorphisms). Let \mathcal{A} be a small abelian category. Define a category \mathcal{A}_\leftarrow with $\text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}_\leftarrow) = \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$, and whose morphisms are defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}_\leftarrow}(X, Y) = \{f: Y \rightarrow X \text{ in } \mathcal{A} \mid f \text{ epimorphism}\}.$$

Note that this is indeed a category since the identity morphism is an epimorphism and epimorphisms are closed under composition.

Now for each $A \in \mathcal{A}$, we define a functor

$$\mathcal{H}_A: \mathcal{A}_\leftarrow \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}_*; \quad Z \mapsto \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(Z, A)$$

and sends a morphism $f: Z_1 \rightarrow Z_2$ in \mathcal{A}_\leftarrow (which is to say, an epimorphism $\tilde{f}: Z_2 \twoheadrightarrow Z_1$ in \mathcal{A}) to the map

$$\mathcal{H}_A(f): \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(Z_1, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(Z_2, A); \quad (\alpha: Z_1 \rightarrow A) \mapsto (\alpha \circ \tilde{f}: Z_2 \rightarrow A).$$

Note that the distinguished point in the hom sets above is given by the zero morphism.

Definition 34 (member functor). Let \mathcal{A} be a small abelian category. We define a functor $\mathcal{M}: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}_*$ on objects by

$$A \mapsto \mathcal{M}(A) = \text{colim } \mathcal{H}_A.$$

On morphisms, functoriality comes from the functoriality of the colimit and the co-Yoneda embedding.

Strictly speaking, we have finished our construction, but it doesn't do us much good as stated. It turns out that the sets $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{A})$ have a much simpler interpretation.

Proposition 35. for any $A \in \mathcal{A}$, the value of the member functor $\mathcal{M}(A)$ is

$$\mathcal{M}(A) = \coprod_{X \in \mathcal{A}} \text{Hom}(X, A) / \sim,$$

2. Abelian categories

where $g \sim g'$ if there exist epimorphisms f and f' making the below diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{f} \twoheadrightarrow & X \\ f' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X' & \xrightarrow{g'} & A \end{array}$$

Proof. The colimit can be computed using the following coequalizer.

$$\coprod_{\substack{f \in \text{Morph}(\mathcal{A}_{\leftarrow}) \\ \tilde{f}: Y \rightarrow X}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, A) \xrightarrow[\neg \circ \tilde{f}]{\text{id}} \coprod_{Z \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}_{\leftarrow})} \text{Hom}(Z, A) \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}} \mathcal{M}(A)$$

On elements, we have the following.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & (g: X \rightarrow A) \\ (g: X \rightarrow A) & \searrow \neg \circ \tilde{f} & \parallel \\ & & (g \circ \tilde{f}: Y \rightarrow A) \end{array}$$

Thus,

$$\mathcal{M}(A) = \coprod_{Z \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}_{\leftarrow})} \text{Hom}(Z, A) / \sim,$$

where \sim is the equivalence relation generated by the relation

$$(g: X \rightarrow A) R (g': X' \rightarrow A) \iff \exists f: X' \twoheadrightarrow X \text{ such that } g' = g \circ f.$$

The above relation is reflexive and transitive, but not symmetric. The smallest equivalence relation containing it is the following.

$$(g: X \rightarrow A) \sim (g': X' \rightarrow A) \iff \exists f: Z \twoheadrightarrow X, f': Z \twoheadrightarrow X' \text{ such that } g' \circ f' = g \circ f.$$

That is, $g \sim g'$ if there exist epimorphisms making the below diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{f} \twoheadrightarrow & X \\ f' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X' & \xrightarrow{g'} & A \end{array}$$

□

In summary, the elements of $\mathcal{M}(A)$ are equivalence classes of morphisms into A modulo the above relation, and for a morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ in \mathcal{A} , $\mathcal{M}(f)$ acts on an equivalence

class $[g]$ by

$$\mathcal{M}(f): [g] \mapsto [g \circ f].$$

Lemma 36. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in a small abelian category \mathcal{A} such that $f \sim 0$. Then $f = 0$.

Proof. We have that $f \sim 0$ if and only if there exists an object Z and epimorphisms making the following diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & B \end{array}$$

But by the universal property for epimorphisms, $f \circ g = 0$ implies $f = 0$. \square

Now we introduce some load-lightening notation: we write $(\hat{-}) = \mathcal{M}(-)$.

Lemma 37. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in a small abelian category \mathcal{A} . Then $f = 0$ if and only if $\hat{f}: \hat{A} \rightarrow \hat{B} = 0$.

Proof. Suppose that $f = 0$. Then for any $[g] \in \hat{A}$

$$\hat{f}([g]) = [g \circ 0] = [0].$$

Thus, $\hat{f}([g]) = [0]$ for all g , so $\hat{f} = 0$.

Conversely, suppose that $\hat{f} = 0$. Then in particular $\hat{f}([\text{id}_A]) = [0]$. But

$$\hat{f}([\text{id}_A]) = [\text{id}_A \circ f] = [f].$$

By Lemma 36, $[f] = [0]$ implies $f = 0$. \square

Corollary 38. A diagram commutes in \mathcal{A} if and only if its image in Set_* under \mathcal{M} commutes.

Proof. A diagram commutes in \mathcal{A} if and only if any two ways of going from one object to another agree, i.e. if the difference of any two

I actually don't see this right now. \square

Lemma 39. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in a small abelian category.

- The morphism f is a monomorphism if and only if $\mathcal{M}(f)$ is an

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

3.1. Chain complexes

Definition 40 (category of chain complexes). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. A chain complex C_\bullet in \mathcal{A} is a collection of objects $C_n \in \mathcal{A}$, $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, together with morphisms $d_n: C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$ such that $d_{n-1} \circ d_n = 0$.

The category of chain complexes in \mathcal{A} , denoted $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, is the category whose objects are chain complexes and whose morphisms are morphisms $C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ of chain complexes, i.e. for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ a map $f_n: C_n \rightarrow D_n$ such that all of the squares form commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{n+2}^C} & C_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}^C} & C_n & \xrightarrow{d_n^C} & C_{n-1} \xrightarrow{d_{n-1}^C} \cdots \\ & & \downarrow f_{n+1} & & \downarrow f_n & & \downarrow f_{n-1} \\ \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{n+2}^D} & D_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}^D} & D_n & \xrightarrow{d_n^D} & D_{n-1} \xrightarrow{d_{n-1}^D} \cdots \end{array}$$

We also define $\mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A})$ to be the category of bounded-below chain complexes (i.e. the full subcategory consisting of chain complexes C_\bullet such that $C_n = 0$ for small enough n), $\mathbf{Ch}^-(\mathcal{A})$ to be the category of bounded-above chain complexes, and $\mathbf{Ch}^{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ and $\mathbf{Ch}^{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ similarly.

Theorem 41. The category $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ is abelian.

Proof. We check each of the conditions.

The zero object is the zero chain complex, the **Ab**-enrichment is given level-wise, and the product is given level-wise as the direct sum. That this satisfies the universal property follows almost immediately from the universal property in \mathcal{A} : given a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Q_\bullet & & \\ & f_\bullet \swarrow & \downarrow \exists! \phi_\bullet & \searrow g_\bullet & \\ C_\bullet & \xleftarrow{p_1} & C_\bullet \times D_\bullet & \xrightarrow{p_2} & D_\bullet \end{array}$$

the only thing we need to check is that the map ϕ produced level-wise is really a chain

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

map, i.e. that

$$\phi_{n-1} \circ d_n^Q = d_n^C \oplus d_n^D \circ \phi_n.$$

By the above work, the RHS can be re-written as

$$\begin{aligned} (d_n^C \oplus d_n^D) \circ (i_1 \circ f_{n-1} + i_2 \circ g_{n-1}) &= i_1 \circ d_n^C \circ f_n + i_2 \circ d_n^D \circ g_n \\ &= i_1 \circ f_{n-1} \circ d_n^Q + i_2 \circ g_{n-1} \circ d_n^Q \\ &= (i_1 \circ f_{n-1} + i_2 \circ g_{n-1}) \circ d_n^Q, \end{aligned}$$

which is equal to the LHS.

The kernel is also defined level-wise. The standard diagram chase shows that the induced morphisms between kernels make this into a chain complex; to see that it satisfies the universal property, we need only show that the map ϕ below is a chain map.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Q_\bullet & & \\ & \swarrow \phi_\bullet & \downarrow g_\bullet & \searrow 0 & \\ \ker(f_\bullet) & \xrightarrow{\iota_\bullet} & A_\bullet & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & B_\bullet \end{array}$$

That is, we must have

$$\phi_{n-1} \circ d_n^Q = d_n^{\ker f} \circ \phi_n. \quad (3.1)$$

The composition

$$Q_n \xrightarrow{g_n} A_n \xrightarrow{f} B_n \xrightarrow{d_n^B} B_{n-1}$$

gives zero by assumption, giving us by the universal property for kernels a unique map

$$\psi: Q_n \rightarrow \ker f_{n-1}$$

such that

$$\iota_{n-1} \circ \psi = d_n^A \circ g_n.$$

We will be done if we can show that both sides of Equation 3.1 can play the role of ψ . Plugging in the LHS, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{n-1} \circ \phi_{n-1} \circ d_n^Q &= g_{n-1} \circ d_n^Q \\ &= d_n^A \circ g_n \end{aligned}$$

as we wanted. Plugging in the RHS we have

$$\iota_{n-1} \circ d_n^{\ker f} \circ \phi_n = d_n^A \circ g_n.$$

The case of cokernels is dual.

Since a chain map is a monomorphism (resp. epimorphism) if and only if it is a monomor-

phism (resp. epimorphism), we have immediately that monomorphisms are the kernels of their cokernels, and epimorphisms are the cokernels of their kernels. \square

The categories $\mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A})$, etc., are also abelian.

3.2. Homology

We would like to replicate the notion of the homology of a chain complex C_\bullet in the context of abelian categories.

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{d_{n+2}} C_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}} C_n \xrightarrow{d_n} C_{n-1} \xrightarrow{d_{n-1}} \cdots$$

This will mean finding appropriate notions of every symbol appearing in the equation.

$$H_n(C_\bullet) = \frac{\ker d_n}{\operatorname{im} d_{n+1}}.$$

We already have a notion of the kernel, which we can use to define a notion of the image in the following way. Given a map $f: A \rightarrow B$, we heuristically think of the cokernel of f as being $B/\operatorname{im} f$. Thus, taking the kernel of the cokernel should give us the image of f .

Definition 42 (image). Given a morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$, the image of f is $\operatorname{im} f = \ker \operatorname{coker} f$.

Now we need to figure out what it means to quotient the image of one map by the kernel of the next. Again, the cokernel saves our necks; we just need a map from $\operatorname{im} d_{n+1}$ into $\ker d_n$. The homology will be the cokernel of this map.

Definition 43 (homology). Let

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C$$

be morphisms such that $g \circ f = 0$. We can build the following commutative diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \operatorname{im} f & & \\ & & \downarrow i & \searrow 0 & \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{g} & C \\ & & \downarrow p & \nearrow & \\ & & \operatorname{coker} f & & \end{array}$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

Since $g \circ i = 0$, i factors through $\ker g$, giving us a morphism $\phi: \operatorname{im} f \rightarrow \ker g$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \operatorname{im} f & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \ker g & \longrightarrow & H_n \\
 & \searrow i & \downarrow & & \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{g} & C \\
 & & \downarrow p & \nearrow & \\
 & & \operatorname{coker} f & &
 \end{array}$$

The homology of the sequence $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ at B is then $\operatorname{coker} \phi$.

Definition 44 (exact sequence). Let

$$A_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} A_2 \xrightarrow{f_2} \cdots \xrightarrow{f_{n-1}} A_n$$

be objects and morphisms in an abelian category. We say that the above sequence is exact if ϕ_i is an isomorphism, i.e. if the homology is zero. We say that a complex (C_\bullet, d) is exact if it is exact at all positions.

A short exact sequence is an exact sequence of the form

$$0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$

Proposition 45. Homology extends to a family of additive functors

$$H_n: \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}.$$

Proof. We need to define H_n on morphisms. To this end, let $f_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be a morphism of chain complexes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 C_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}^C} & C_n & \xrightarrow{d_n^C} & C_{n-1} \\
 f_{n+1} \downarrow & & \downarrow f_n & & \downarrow f_{n-1} \\
 D_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}^D} & D_n & \xrightarrow{d_n^D} & D_{n-1}
 \end{array}$$

We need a map $H_n(C_\bullet) \rightarrow H_n(D_\bullet)$. This will come from a map $\ker d_n^C \rightarrow \ker d_n^D$. In fact, f_n gives us such a map, essentially by restriction. We need to show that this descends to a map between cokernels. \square

We can also go the other way, by defining a map

$$\iota_n: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$$

which sends an object A to the chain complex

$$\cdots \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow \cdots$$

concentrated in degree n .

Example 46. In some situations, homology is easy to compute explicitly. Let

$$\cdots \longrightarrow C_1 \xrightarrow{f} C_0 \longrightarrow 0$$

be a chain complex in $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$. Then $H_0(C_\bullet) = \text{coker } f$.

Similarly, if

$$0 \longrightarrow C_0 \xrightarrow{f} C_{-1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

is a chain complex in $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$, then $H_0(C_\bullet) = \ker f$.

3.3. Diagram lemmas

3.3.1. The splitting lemma

Lemma 47 (Splitting lemma). Consider the following solid short exact sequence in an abelian category \mathcal{A} .

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{i_A} B \xrightarrow{\pi_C} C \longrightarrow 0$$

$\nwarrow \pi_A \quad \nearrow i_C$

The following are equivalent.

1. The sequence *splits from the left*, i.e. there exists a morphism $\pi_A: B \rightarrow A$ such that $\pi_A \circ i_A = \text{id}_A$
2. The sequence *splits from the right*, i.e. there exists a morphism $i_C: C \rightarrow B$ such that $\pi_C \circ i_C = \text{id}_C$
3. B is a direct sum $A \oplus C$ with the obvious canonical injections and projections.

Proof. That $3 \Rightarrow 1$ and $3 \Rightarrow 2$ is obvious. We now show that $1 \Rightarrow 2$.

By exactness, $i_A: A \rightarrow B$ is a kernel of π_C . Consider the map $\phi = \text{id}_B - i_C \circ \pi_C$. Since

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_C \circ \phi &= \pi_C - \pi_C \circ i_C \circ \pi_C \\ &= \pi_C - \text{id} \circ \pi_C \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

the universal property for the kernel guarantees us a map $\psi: B \rightarrow A$ such that $i_A \circ \psi = \phi$.

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

Now we use the same universal property in a different situation. Consider the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & A & & \\ & \swarrow & \downarrow i_A & \searrow 0 & \\ A & \xrightarrow{i_A} & B & \xrightarrow{\pi_C} & C \end{array}$$

The universal property guarantees us a unique dashed map making everything commute. But id_A and $i_A \circ \psi$ both do the job since

$$\begin{aligned} i_A \circ \psi \circ i_A &= i_A - i_C \circ \pi_C \circ i_A \\ &= i_A. \end{aligned}$$

□

3.3.2. The snake lemma

Lemma 48. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, and let the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times_C B & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}} & B \\ \tilde{g} \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & C \end{array}$$

be a pullback in \mathcal{A} . Then \tilde{f} is an epimorphism.

Proof. The pullback is in particular a limit, hence is constructed with products and equalizers as follows.

$$0 \longrightarrow A \times_C B \xrightarrow{(\tilde{f}, \tilde{g})} A \oplus B \xrightarrow{f-g} C$$

Because f is epic, $f - g$ is epic, so we have a bona fide short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A \times_C B \xrightarrow{(\tilde{f}, \tilde{g})} A \oplus B \xrightarrow{f-g} C \longrightarrow 0.$$

This means that the above square is also a pushout square. □

Lemma 49. Let $f: B \twoheadrightarrow C$ be an epimorphism, and let $g: D \rightarrow C$ be any morphism. Then the kernel of f functions as the kernel of the pullback of f along g , in the sense that we have the following commuting diagram in which the right-hand square is a pullback square.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \ker f' & \xrightarrow{i} & S & \xrightarrow{f'} & D \\ \parallel & & \downarrow g' & \lrcorner & \downarrow g \\ \ker f & \xrightarrow{\iota} & B & \xrightarrow{f} & C \end{array}$$

Proof. Consider the following pullback square, where f is an epimorphism.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{f'} & D \\ g' \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow g \\ B & \xrightarrow{f} & C \end{array}$$

By Lemma 48 the pullback f' is also an epimorphism. Denote the kernel of f by K .

The claim is that K is also a kernel of f' . Of course, in order for this statement to make sense we need a map $i: K \rightarrow S$. This is given to us by the universal property of the pullback as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} K & & \xrightarrow{0} & & D \\ & \searrow \exists! i & & & \downarrow g \\ & & S & \xrightarrow{\quad} & D \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ & & B & \xrightarrow{f} & C \end{array}$$

ι (arrow from K to B)

Next we need to verify that (K, i) is actually the kernel of f' , i.e. satisfies the universal property. To this end, let $v: Q \rightarrow S$ be a map such that $f' \circ v = 0$. We need to find a unique factorization of v through K .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Q & & \\ & \swarrow \exists! v' & \downarrow v & \searrow 0 & \\ K & \xrightarrow{i} & S & \xrightarrow{f'} & D \\ & \searrow \iota & \downarrow g' & & \downarrow g \\ & & B & \xrightarrow{f} & C \end{array}$$

By definition $f' \circ v = 0$. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} f \circ g' \circ v &= g \circ f' \circ v \\ &= g \circ 0 \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

so $g' \circ v$ factors uniquely through K as $g' \circ v = \iota \circ v'$. It remains only to check that the triangle formed by v' commutes, i.e. $v = v' \circ i$. To see this, consider the following

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

diagram, where the bottom right square is the pullback from before.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Q & & & 0 & \\
 \downarrow \exists! & & & \searrow & \\
 & S & \xrightarrow{f'} & D & \\
 \downarrow g' & & & \downarrow g & \\
 & B & \xrightarrow{f} & C & \\
 \uparrow g' \circ v & & & &
 \end{array}$$

By the universal property, there exists a unique map $Q \rightarrow S$ making this diagram commute. However, both v and $i \circ v'$ work, so $v = i \circ v'$.

Thus we have shown that, in a precise sense, the kernel of an epimorphism functions as the kernel of its pullback, and we have the following commutative diagram, where the right hand square is a pullback.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \ker f' & \xrightarrow{i} & S & \xrightarrow{f'} & D \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow g' & & \downarrow g \\
 \ker f & \xrightarrow{i} & B & \xrightarrow{f} & C
 \end{array}$$

□

At least in the case that g is mono, when phrased in terms of elements, this result is more or less obvious; we can imagine the diagram above as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{elements of pullback} \\ \text{which map to } 0 \end{array} \right\} & \hookrightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{elements of } B \\ \text{which map to } D \end{array} \right\} & \twoheadrightarrow & D \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{elements of } B \\ \text{which map to } 0 \end{array} \right\} & \hookrightarrow & B & \twoheadrightarrow & C
 \end{array}$$

Theorem 50 (snake lemma). Consider the following commutative diagram with exact rows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{m} & B & \xrightarrow{e} & C \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A' & \xrightarrow{m'} & B' & \xrightarrow{e'} & C' \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

This gives us an exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \ker f \rightarrow \ker g \rightarrow \ker h \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} f \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} g \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} h \rightarrow 0.$$

Proof. We provide running commentary on the diagram below.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \cdots \rightarrow & \ker f & \cdots \rightarrow & \ker g & \cdots \rightarrow & \ker h \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \rightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{m} & B & \xrightarrow{e} \twoheadrightarrow & C \rightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\
 0 & \rightarrow & A' & \xrightarrow{m'} & B' & \xrightarrow{e'} \twoheadrightarrow & C' \rightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & \text{coker } f & \cdots \rightarrow & \text{coker } g & \cdots \rightarrow & \text{coker } h \cdots
 \end{array}
 \tag{3.2}$$

We will see why the dotted portions are exact later.

The only thing left is to define the dashed connecting homomorphism, and to prove exactness at $\ker h$ and $\text{coker } f$.

Extract from the data of [Diagram 3.2](#) the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & & \ker h \\
 & & & & \downarrow \\
 A & \xrightarrow{m} & B & \xrightarrow{e} \twoheadrightarrow & C \\
 \downarrow f & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\
 A' & \xrightarrow{m'} & B' & \xrightarrow{e'} \twoheadrightarrow & C' \\
 \downarrow & & & & \\
 & & \text{coker } f & &
 \end{array}$$

Take a pullback and a pushout, and using [Lemma 49](#) (and its dual), we find the following.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \ker u & \xrightarrow{a} & S & \xrightarrow{u} \twoheadrightarrow & \ker h \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow r & & \downarrow \\
 A & \xrightarrow{m} & B & \xrightarrow{e} \twoheadrightarrow & C \\
 \downarrow f & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\
 A' & \xrightarrow{m'} & B' & \xrightarrow{e'} \twoheadrightarrow & C' \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow s & & \parallel \\
 \text{coker } f & \xrightarrow{v} & T & \xrightarrow{b} \twoheadrightarrow & \text{coker } v
 \end{array}$$

Consider the map

$$\delta_0 = S \xrightarrow{r} B \xrightarrow{g} B' \xrightarrow{s} T .$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

By commutativity, $\delta \circ a = 0$, hence we get a map

$$\delta_1: \ker h \rightarrow T.$$

Composing this with b gives 0, hence we get a map

$$\delta: \operatorname{coker} f \rightarrow \ker h.$$

□

There is another version of the snake lemma which does not have the first and last zeroes.

Theorem 51 (snake lemma II). Given the following commutative diagram with exact rows,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{m} & B & \xrightarrow{e} & C & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ f \downarrow & & g \downarrow & & \downarrow h & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A' & \xrightarrow{m'} & B' & \xrightarrow{e'} & C' \end{array}$$

we get a exact sequence

$$\ker f \rightarrow \ker g \rightarrow \ker h \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} f \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} g \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} h.$$

3.3.3. The long exact sequence on homology

Corollary 52. Given an exact sequence of complexes

$$0 \longrightarrow A_{\bullet} \xrightarrow{f_{\bullet}} B_{\bullet} \xrightarrow{g_{\bullet}} C_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

we get a long exact sequence on homology

$$\begin{array}{c} \dots \longrightarrow H_{n+1}(C) \\ \searrow \delta \nearrow \\ H_n(A) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(B) \xrightarrow{H_n(g)} H_n(C) \\ \searrow \delta \nearrow \\ H_{n-1}(A) \xrightarrow{H_{n-1}(f)} H_{n-1}(B) \xrightarrow{H_{n-1}(g)} H_{n-1}(C) \\ \searrow \delta \nearrow \\ H_{n-2}(A) \longrightarrow \dots \end{array}$$

Proof. For each n , we have a diagram of the following form.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & B_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & C_{n+1} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow d_{n+1}^A & & \downarrow d_{n+1}^B & & \downarrow d_{n+1}^C \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A_n & \longrightarrow & B_n & \longrightarrow & C_n \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

Applying the snake lemma ([Theorem 50](#)) gives us, for each n , two exact sequences as follows.

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker d_{n+1}^A \longrightarrow \ker d_{n+1}^B \longrightarrow \ker d_{n+1}^C$$

and

$$\operatorname{coker} d_n^A \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} d_n^B \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} d_n^C \longrightarrow 0$$

We can put these together in a diagram with exact rows as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \operatorname{coker} d_n^A & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{coker} d_n^B & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{coker} d_n^C & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & & & & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \ker d_{n-1}^A & \longrightarrow & \ker d_{n-1}^B & \longrightarrow & \ker d_{n-1}^C \end{array}$$

Recall that for each n , we get a map

$$\phi_{n-1}^A: \operatorname{im} d_{n-1}^A \rightarrow \ker d_n^A,$$

and similarly for B_\bullet and C_\bullet .

Adding these in gives the following.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \operatorname{coker} d_n^A & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{coker} d_n^B & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{coker} d_n^C & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \ker d_{n-1}^A & \longrightarrow & \ker d_{n-1}^B & \longrightarrow & \ker d_{n-1}^C \end{array}$$

A second application of the snake lemma then gives a long exact sequence

$$\ker \phi_f \rightarrow \ker \phi_g \rightarrow \ker \phi_h \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} \phi_f \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} \phi_g \rightarrow \operatorname{coker} \phi_h$$

□

Lemma 53. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, and let f be a morphism of short exact se-

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

quences in $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ as below.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A'_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\alpha_\bullet} & A_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\alpha'_\bullet} & A''_\bullet \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow f'_\bullet & & \downarrow f_\bullet & & \downarrow f''_\bullet \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & B'_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\beta_\bullet} & B_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\beta'_\bullet} & B''_\bullet \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

This gives us the following morphism of long exact sequences on homology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_n(A) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\alpha')} & H_n(A'') & \xrightarrow{\delta} & H_{n-1}(A') \xrightarrow{H_{n-1}(\alpha)} H_{n-1}(A) \longrightarrow \cdots \\ & & \downarrow H_n(f) & & \downarrow H_n(f'') & & \downarrow H_n(f') \downarrow H_n(f) \\ \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_n(B) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\beta')} & H_n(B'') & \xrightarrow{\delta} & H_{n-1}(B') \xrightarrow{H_{n-1}(\beta)} H_{n-1}(B) \longrightarrow \cdots \end{array}$$

In particular, the connecting morphism δ is functorial.

3.3.4. The five lemma

Lemma 54 (four lemmas).

1. Let

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} B & \longrightarrow & C & \longrightarrow & D & \longrightarrow & E \\ b \downarrow & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow d & & \downarrow e \\ B' & \longrightarrow & C' & \longrightarrow & D' & \longrightarrow & E' \end{array}$$

be a commutative diagram with exact rows, with monomorphisms and epimorphisms as marked. Then c is an epimorphism.

2. Let

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \longrightarrow & B & \longrightarrow & C & \longrightarrow & D \\ a \downarrow & & \downarrow b & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow d \\ A' & \longrightarrow & B' & \longrightarrow & C' & \longrightarrow & D' \end{array}$$

be a commutative diagram with exact rows, with monomorphisms and epimorphisms as marked. Then c is a monomorphism.

Proof.

1. Expand the diagram with image-kernel factorization as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} B & \twoheadrightarrow & I_1 & \hookrightarrow & C & \twoheadrightarrow & I_2 & \hookrightarrow & D & \twoheadrightarrow & I_3 & \hookrightarrow & E \\ \downarrow b & & \downarrow i & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow j & & \downarrow d & & \downarrow k & & \downarrow e \\ B' & \twoheadrightarrow & I'_1 & \hookrightarrow & C' & \twoheadrightarrow & I'_2 & \hookrightarrow & D' & \twoheadrightarrow & I'_3 & \hookrightarrow & E' \end{array}$$

It is immediate that i is epi, and that k is mono. Now, consider the following morphism of short exact sequences.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & I_2 & \hookrightarrow & D & \twoheadrightarrow & I_3 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow j & & \downarrow d & & \downarrow k & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & I'_2 & \hookrightarrow & D' & \twoheadrightarrow & I'_3 & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}$$

The snake lemma ([Theorem 50](#)) tells us that we have a short exact sequence

$$0 = \ker k \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} j \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} d = 0,$$

implying that $\operatorname{coker} j = 0$, i.e. that j is epi.

We have another morphism of short exact sequences.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & I_1 & \hookrightarrow & C & \twoheadrightarrow & I_2 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow i & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow j & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & I'_1 & \hookrightarrow & C' & \twoheadrightarrow & I'_2 & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}$$

Using the information that i and j are epi, the snake lemma tells us that j is epi as required.

2. Dual.

□

Theorem 55 (five lemma). Let

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} A & \longrightarrow & B & \longrightarrow & C & \longrightarrow & D & \longrightarrow & E \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \\ A' & \longrightarrow & B' & \longrightarrow & C' & \longrightarrow & D' & \longrightarrow & E' \end{array}$$

be a commutative diagram with exact rows, with monomorphisms, epimorphisms, and isomorphisms as marked. Then c is an isomorphism.

Proof. The first part of [Lemma 54](#) tells us that c is epi, and the second part tells us that c is mono. □

3.3.5. The nine lemma

Theorem 56 (nine lemma). Given the following commuting diagram whose rows are exact sequences,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & 0 & & 0 & & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A_2 & \hookrightarrow & B_2 & \xrightarrow{p} \twoheadrightarrow & C_2 \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A_1 & \hookrightarrow & B_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} \twoheadrightarrow & C_1 \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A_0 & \hookrightarrow & B_0 & \xrightarrow{\quad} \twoheadrightarrow & C_0 \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & 0 & & 0 & & 0
 \end{array}$$

we have the following results.

1. If the first and the second columns A_\bullet and B_\bullet are exact sequences, then third column C_\bullet is also an exact sequence.
2. If B_\bullet and C_\bullet are exact sequence, then A_\bullet is an exact sequence.
3. If A_\bullet and C_\bullet are exact and B_\bullet is a chain complex, then B_\bullet is exact.

Proof.

1. First, we show that C_\bullet is a chain complex, i.e. that $g \circ f = 0$. Since p is an epimorphism, it suffices to show that $g \circ f \circ p = 0$. But this is zero by commutativity of the diagram and the fact that B_\bullet is a chain complex.

Thus, the diagram above is a short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A_\bullet \hookrightarrow B_\bullet \xrightarrow{\quad} \twoheadrightarrow C_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$

of chain complexes, and we get a long exact sequence on homology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & & & 0 \\
 & & & & & \delta & \longrightarrow \\
 \curvearrowright & & & & & & \\
 & H_2(A_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & H_2(B_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & H_2(C_\bullet) & \\
 & & & & & \delta & \longrightarrow \\
 \curvearrowright & & & & & & \\
 & H_1(A_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & H_1(B_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & H_1(C_\bullet) & \\
 & & & & & \delta & \longrightarrow \\
 \curvearrowright & & & & & & \\
 & H_0(A_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & H_0(B_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & H_0(C_\bullet) & \\
 & & & & & \delta & \longrightarrow \\
 \curvearrowright & & & & & & \\
 & 0 & & & & & 0
 \end{array}$$

If the first two columns are zeroes, then $H_n(C_\bullet) = 0$ by exactness; that is, C_\bullet is exact.

2. Formally dual.
3. Identical.

□

3.4. Exact functors

Definition 57 (exact functor). Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be an additive functor, and let

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0$$

be an exact sequence. We use the following terminology.

- We call F left exact if

$$0 \longrightarrow F(A) \xrightarrow{f} F(B) \xrightarrow{g} F(C)$$

is exact

- We call F right exact if

$$F(A) \xrightarrow{f} F(B) \xrightarrow{g} F(C) \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact

- We call F exact if it is both left exact and right exact.

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

Example 58. We showed in [Lemma 10](#) that both hom functors $\text{Hom}(A, -)$ and $\text{Hom}(-, B)$ are left exact.

3.4.1. Exactness and preservation of (co)limits

The above definitions of left and right exactness are evocative, but one can cast them in a more useful way. One starting point is to notice that they are related to the preservation of limits.

Proposition 59. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a functor between abelian categories.

- If F preserves finite limits, then F is left exact.
- If F preserves finite colimits, then F is right exact.

Proof. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in an abelian category. The universal property for the kernel of f is equivalent to the following: (K, ι) is a kernel of f if and only if the following diagram is a pullback.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \iota \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

Any functor between abelian categories which preserves limits must in particular preserve pullbacks. Any such functor also sends initial objects to initial objects, and since initial objects are zero objects, such a functor preserves zero objects. Thus, any complete functor between abelian categories takes kernels to kernels.

Dually, any functor which preserves colimits preserves cokernels.

Next, note that the exactness of the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0$$

is equivalent to the following three conditions.

1. Exactness at A means that f is mono, i.e. $0 \rightarrow A$ is a kernel of f .
2. Exactness at B means that $\text{im } f = \ker g$.
 - If f is mono, this is equivalent to demanding that (A, f) is a kernel of g .
 - If g is epi, this is equivalent to demanding that (C, g) is a cokernel of f .
3. Exactness at C means that g is epi, i.e. $C \rightarrow 0$ is a cokernel of g .

□

Astonishingly, the converse is also true; any functor which is left exact preserves finite limits, and any functor which is right exact preserves finite colimits.

This is a surprise; after all, the above proof makes it seem that left exactness is related only to the preservation of kernels, and one needs also to preserve finite direct sums. However, the structure of an abelian category helps us here, as the following lemma shows.

Lemma 60. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a functor between abelian categories which is either left or right exact. Then F is additive.

Proof. First, assume that F is left exact. By [Corollary 32](#), it suffices to show that F preserves direct sums. To this end, consider the image of a split exact sequence under a left-exact functor F .

$$0 \longrightarrow F(A) \xrightarrow{F(i_A)} F(A \oplus B) \xrightarrow{F(\pi_B)} F(B) \longrightarrow 0$$

Because we still have the identities

$$F(\pi_A) \circ F(i_A) = \text{id}_{F(A)}, \quad F(\pi_B) \circ F(i_B) = \text{id}_{F(B)},$$

the morphism $F(\pi_B)$ is still epic; hence the splitting lemma ([Theorem 47](#)) implies that the sequence is still split exact. Thus, F preserves direct sums.

The case in which F is right exact is dual. □

Proposition 61. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a functor between abelian categories.

- If F is left-exact, then F preserves finite limits.
- If F is right-exact, then F preserves finite colimits.

Proof. Suppose F is left exact. Then F preserves kernels and products, hence all finite limits. If F is right exact, then F preserves all cokernels and coproducts, hence all finite colimits. □

Our definition of homology now allows us to cleanly note the following.

Proposition 62. Exact functors preserve homology; that is, $H_n(F(C_\bullet)) = F(H_n(C_\bullet))$.

Proof. Exact functors preserve kernels and cokernels. □

Example 63. Consider the category \mathcal{D} with objects and morphisms as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \star \\ & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \bullet \end{array}$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. By [Example 30](#), the category of functors $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ is an abelian category.

Consider a functor $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ which yields the following diagram in \mathcal{A} .

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & 0 \\ & & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

Taking the pullback of the above diagram yields the kernel of f .

A natural transformation ϕ between functors $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ consists of the data of a commuting square as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ \phi_A \downarrow & & \downarrow \phi_B \\ A' & \xrightarrow{f'} & B' \end{array}$$

That is, we may view taking kernels as a functor from the category of morphisms in \mathcal{A} to \mathcal{A} . Furthermore, because this functor is the result of a limiting procedure it preserves limits. Thus, given an exact sequence of morphisms in \mathcal{A}

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \hookrightarrow & B & \twoheadrightarrow & C \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & f \downarrow & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \hookrightarrow & B & \twoheadrightarrow & C \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

one gets an exact sequence of kernels

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker f \hookrightarrow \ker g \longrightarrow \ker h .$$

Conversely, taking cokernels is cocomplete, hence right exact, so one has also an exact sequence of cokernels

$$\operatorname{coker} f \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} g \twoheadrightarrow \operatorname{coker} h \longrightarrow 0$$

Note that the data of a kernel

3.4.2. Exactness of the hom functor and tensor products

We have already seen that the hom functor $\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(-, -)$ is left exact in both slots. Now we understand precisely why this is true: the hom functor preserves limits in both slots!¹

Since any functor which is a right adjoint preserves limits, any such functor between

¹In the first slot, one must take the limits in the category \mathcal{A}^{op} .

abelian categories must be left exact. For example, there is an adjunction

$$- \otimes_R N : \mathbf{Mod}\text{-}R \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Ab} : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(N, -)$$

which comes from replacing a map out of the tensor product by its corresponding bilinear map, and currying² along the first entry. Thus, the map $- \otimes_R N$ is a left adjoint, hence preserves colimits, hence is right exact.

We can use this to check exactness (hence limit preservation) of other functors using the following beefed-up version of the Yoneda lemma. I don't actually need this right now, but it's a nice result anyway.

Lemma 64. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, and let

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C$$

be objects and morphisms in \mathcal{A} . If for all X the abelian groups and homomorphisms

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, A) \xrightarrow{f_*} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, B) \xrightarrow{g_*} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, C)$$

form an exact sequence of abelian groups, then $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ is exact.

Proof. To see this, take $X = A$, giving the following sequence.

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(A, A) \xrightarrow{f_*} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(A, B) \xrightarrow{g_*} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(A, C)$$

Exactness implies that

$$0 = (g_* \circ f_*)(\mathrm{id}) = (g \circ f)(\mathrm{id}) = g \circ f,$$

so $\mathrm{im} f \subset \ker g$. Now take $X = \ker g$.

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\ker g, A) \xrightarrow{f_*} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\ker g, B) \xrightarrow{g_*} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\ker g, C)$$

The canonical inclusion $\iota: \ker g \rightarrow B$ is mapped to zero under g_* , hence is mapped to under f_* by some $\alpha: \ker g \rightarrow A$. That is, we have the following commuting triangle.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ \alpha \nearrow & & \searrow f \\ \ker g & \xrightarrow{\iota} & B \end{array}$$

Thus $\mathrm{im} \iota = \ker g \subset \mathrm{im} f$. □

²I see what you mean, but where is this term from?

3.5. Quasi-isomorphism

One of the organizing principals of homological algebra is that the fundamental data contained in a chain complex is the level-wise homology of that chain complex, rather than the chain complex itself. We will see many examples (especially in [Part II](#), on algebraic topology) in which one can perform a drastic simplification of a problem by replacing a chain complex by a better-behaved one which has isomorphic homology.

Therefore, one would like to pay special attention to morphisms of chain complexes $f_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ which induce isomorphisms on homology. One even has a special name for such a morphism.

Definition 65 (quasi-isomorphism). Let $f_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be a chain map. We say that f is a quasi-isomorphism if it induces isomorphisms on homology; that is, if $H_n(f)$ is an isomorphism for all n .

Quasi-isomorphisms are a surprisingly fiddly concept. Since they induce isomorphisms on homology, and isomorphisms are invertible, one might naïvely hope that quasi-isomorphisms themselves were invertible; that is, that one could find a *quasi-inverse*. Unfortunately, we are not so lucky. Consider the following

By [Example 46](#), we

Definition 66 (resolution). Let A be an object in an abelian category. A resolution of A consists of a chain complex C_\bullet together with a quasi-isomorphism $C_\bullet \rightarrow \iota(A)$.

3.6. Chain Homotopies

Definition 67 (chain homotopy). Let $f_\bullet, g_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be morphisms of chain complexes. A chain homotopy between f_\bullet and g_\bullet is a family of maps

$$h_n: C_n \rightarrow D_{n+1}$$

such that

$$d_{n+1}^D \circ h_n + h_{n-1} \circ d_n^C = f - g.$$

Lemma 68. Let $f_\bullet, g_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be a homotopic chain complexes via a homotopy h , and let F be an additive functor. Then $F(h)$ is a homotopy between $F(f_\bullet)$ and $F(g_\bullet)$.

Proof. We have

$$df + fd = h,$$

so

$$F(d)F(f) + F(f)F(d) = F(h).$$

□

Lemma 69. Homotopy of morphisms is an equivalence relation.

Proof.

- Reflexivity: the zero morphism provides a homotopy between $f \sim f$.
- Symmetry: If $f \stackrel{h}{\sim} g$, then $g \stackrel{-h}{\sim} f$
- Transitivity: If $f \stackrel{h}{\sim} f'$ and $f' \stackrel{h'}{\sim} f''$, then $f \stackrel{h+h'}{\sim} f''$.

□

Lemma 70. Homotopy respects composition. That is, let $f \stackrel{h}{\sim} g$ be homotopic morphisms, and let r be another morphism with appropriate domain and codomain.

- $f \circ r \stackrel{hr}{\sim} g \circ r$
- $r \circ f \stackrel{rh}{\sim} r \circ g$.

Proof. Obvious.

□

3.7. Projectives and injectives

One of the drawbacks of diagrammatic reasoning in abelian categories (which is to say, reasoning on elements in $R\text{-Mod}$) is that not every maneuver one can perform on elements has a diagrammatic analog. One of the most egregious examples of this is the property of lifting against epimorphisms. Given an epimorphism $f: A \twoheadrightarrow B$ and an element of B , one can always find an element of A which maps to it under f . Unfortunately, it is *not* in general the case that given a map $X \rightarrow B$, one can lift it to a map $X \rightarrow A$ making the triangle formed commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & X \\ & \nwarrow \scriptstyle \# & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & B \end{array}$$

Nowever, certain objects do have this property. For example, if X is a free R -module, then we can find a lift by lifting generators; this is always possible. It will be interesting to find objects X which allow this. Such objects are called *projective*.

Definition 71 (projective, injective). An object P in an abelian category \mathcal{A} is projective if for every epimorphism $f: B \twoheadrightarrow C$ and every morphism $p: P \rightarrow C$, there exists a morphism $\tilde{p}: P \rightarrow B$ such that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & P \\ & \nwarrow \scriptstyle \exists \tilde{p} & \downarrow \scriptstyle p \\ B & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & C \end{array}$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

Dually, Q is injective if for every monomorphism $g: A \rightarrow B$ and every morphism $q: A \rightarrow Q$ there exists a morphism $\tilde{q}: B \rightarrow Q$ such that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{g} & B \\ q \downarrow & \swarrow \exists \tilde{q} & \\ Q & & \end{array}$$

Since the hom functor $\text{Hom}(A, -)$ is left exact for every A , it is very easy to see that an object P in an abelian category is said to be projective if the functor $\text{Hom}(P, -)$ is exact, and injective if $\text{Hom}(-, Q)$ is exact.

A recurring theme of homological algebra is that projective and injective objects are extremely nice to work with, and whenever possible we would like to be able to trade in an object for equivalent projective data. We will go into more detail about precisely what we mean by this later. This will be possible when our abelian category has *enough projectives*.

Definition 72 (enough projectives). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. We say that \mathcal{A} has enough projectives if for every object M there exists a projective object P and an epimorphism $P \twoheadrightarrow M$.

Proposition 73. Let

$$0 \longrightarrow A \hookrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f} P \longrightarrow 0$$

be a short exact sequence with P projective. Then the sequence splits.

Proof. We can add another copy of P artfully as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & & P & & \\ & & & & \downarrow \text{id} & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \hookrightarrow & B & \xrightarrow{f} & P \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

By definition, we get a morphism $P \rightarrow B$ making the triangle commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & & P & & \\ & & & & \downarrow \text{id} & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \hookrightarrow & B & \xrightarrow{f} & P \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & & & \nwarrow \exists g & & \end{array}$$

But this says precisely that $f \circ g = \text{id}_P$, i.e. the sequence splits from the right. The result follows from the splitting lemma (Lemma 47). \square

Corollary 74. Let F be an additive functor, and let

$$0 \longrightarrow A \hookrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f} P \longrightarrow 0$$

be an exact sequence with P projective. Then F applied to the sequence gives an exact sequence.

Proof. Applying F to a split sequence gives a split sequence, and all split sequences are exact. \square

Corollary 75. The category $R\text{-Mod}$ has enough projectives.

Proof. By Proposition 15, free modules are projective, and every module is a quotient of a free module. \square

Proposition 76. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category with enough projectives. Then every object $A \in \mathcal{A}$ has a projective resolution.

Dually, any abelian category with enough injectives has injective resolutions.

Proof. Pick a projective which surjects onto A , \square

Definition 77 (projective, injective resolution). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, and let $A \in \mathcal{A}$. A projective resolution of A is a quasi-isomorphism $P_\bullet \rightarrow \iota(A)$, where P_\bullet is a complex of projectives. Similarly, an injective resolution is a quasi-isomorphism $\iota(A) \rightarrow Q_\bullet$ where Q_\bullet is a complex of injectives.

Lemma 78. Let $f: P_\bullet \rightarrow \iota(M)$ be a projective resolution. Then $f: P_0 \rightarrow M$ is an epimorphism.

Proof. We know that $H_0(f): H_0(P) \rightarrow H_0(\iota(M))$ is an isomorphism. But $H_0(\iota(m)) \simeq \iota_M$, and that \square

In fact, we can say more.

Lemma 79. Let $f_\bullet: P_\bullet \rightarrow \iota(A)$ be a chain map. Then f is a projective resolution if and only if the sequence

$$\cdots P_2 \longrightarrow P_1 \longrightarrow P_0 \xrightarrow{f_0} A \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact.

Theorem 80 (horseshoe lemma). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category with enough projectives, and let $P'_\bullet \rightarrow M'$ and $P''_\bullet \rightarrow M''$ be projective resolutions. Then given an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow M' \xrightarrow{f} M \xrightarrow{g} M'' \longrightarrow 0$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

there is a projective resolution $P_\bullet \rightarrow M$ and maps \tilde{f} and \tilde{g} such that the following diagram has exact rows and commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & P'_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}} & P_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\tilde{g}} & P''_\bullet \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & M' & \xrightarrow{f} & M & \xrightarrow{\tilde{g}} & M'' \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

Proof. We construct P_\bullet inductively. We have specified data of the following form.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & P'_1 & & P''_1 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & P'_0 & & P''_0 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & M' & \xrightarrow{f} & M & \xrightarrow{g} & M'' \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

We define $P_0 = P'_0 \oplus P''_0$. We get the maps to and from P_0 from the canonical injection and projection respectively.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & P'_0 & \xrightarrow{\iota} & P'_0 \oplus P''_0 & \xrightarrow{\pi} & P''_0 \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow p' & \searrow f \circ p'_0 & \downarrow p & \swarrow \exists q & \downarrow p'' \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & M' & \xrightarrow{f} & M & \xrightarrow{g} & M'' \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

We get the (dashed) map $P'_0 \rightarrow M$ by composition, and the (dashed) map $P''_0 \rightarrow M$ by projectivity of P''_0 (since by [Lemma 78](#) p'' is an epimorphism). From these the universal property for coproducts gives us the (dotted) map $p: P'_0 \oplus P''_0 \rightarrow M$.

At this point, the innocent reader may believe that we are in the clear, and indeed many books leave it at this. Not so! We don't know that the diagram formed in this way commutes. In fact it does not; there is nothing in the world that tells us that $q \circ \pi = p$.

However, this is but a small transgression, since the *squares* which are formed still commute. To see this, note that we can write

$$p = f \circ p'_0 \circ \pi_{P'_0} + q \circ \pi;$$

composing this with

The snake lemma guarantees that the sequence

$$\operatorname{coker} p' \simeq 0 \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} p \longrightarrow 0 \simeq \operatorname{coker} p''$$

is exact, hence that p is an epimorphism.

One would hope that we could now repeat this process to build further levels of P_\bullet . Unfortunately, this doesn't work because we have no guarantee that $d_1^{P''}$ is an epimorphism, so we can't use the projectiveness of P_1'' to produce a lift. We have to be clever.

The trick is to add an auxiliary row of kernels; that is, to expand the relevant portion of our diagram as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & P'_1 & & & P''_1 & \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow p'_1 & & & \downarrow p''_1 & \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & \ker p' & \dashrightarrow & \ker p & \dashrightarrow & \ker p'' \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & P'_0 & \longrightarrow & P_0 & \longrightarrow & P''_0 \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & M' & \hookrightarrow & M & \twoheadrightarrow & M'' \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

The maps p'_1 and p''_1 come from the exactness of P'_\bullet and P''_\bullet . In fact, they are epimorphisms, because they are really cokernel maps in disguise. We get the dashed map $\ker p' \rightarrow \ker p''$

That means that we are in the same situation as before, and are justified in saying “we proceed inductively”. \square

Theorem 81 (horseshoe lemma for morphisms). Given a morphism of short exact sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & A' & \hookrightarrow & A & \twoheadrightarrow & A'' \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow f' & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow f'' \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & B' & \hookrightarrow & B & \twoheadrightarrow & B'' \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

Proposition 82. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, let M and M' be objects of \mathcal{A} , and

$$P_\bullet \rightarrow M \quad \text{and} \quad P'_\bullet \rightarrow M'$$

be projective resolutions. Then for every morphism $f: M \rightarrow M'$ there exists a lift $\tilde{f}: P_\bullet \rightarrow P'_\bullet$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 P_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}_\bullet} & P'_\bullet \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \iota M & \xrightarrow{\iota f} & \iota M'
 \end{array}$$

commute, which is unique up to homotopy.

Proof. We construct a lift inductively. □

3.8. The homotopy category

In the previous section, we proved many theorems which were schematically of the following form:

Given some data in an abelian category, we can lift it to data between projective resolutions.

One might hope that this data would assemble itself functorially, but this is far too much to ask; we have no reason to believe, having picked lifts \tilde{f} for our morphisms f , that $\widetilde{f \circ g} = \tilde{f} \circ \tilde{g}$.

In this, however, we are saved by the notion of homotopy! While $\widetilde{f \circ g}$ and $\tilde{f} \circ \tilde{g}$ may not be equal, they are certainly homotopic, thanks to [Proposition 82](#). Thus, we will have a shot at functoriality, if we formally invert all homotopies.

And this we can do!

Definition 83 (homotopy category). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. The homotopy category $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{A})$, is the category whose objects are those of $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, and whose morphisms are equivalence classes of morphisms in \mathcal{A} up to homotopy.

This is well-defined by [Lemma 69](#) and [Lemma 70](#).

We will in general not be interested in the full homotopy category, but instead in the bounded-below homotopy category $\mathcal{K}^+(\mathcal{A})$ of *bounded-below* chain complexes up to homotopy.

Lemma 84. The homotopy category $\mathcal{K}^+(\mathcal{A})$ is an additive category, and the quotienting functor $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{K}^+(\mathcal{A})$ is an additive functor.

Proof. Trivial. □

The upshot of the above discussion is that for any abelian category with enough projectives, there are projective resolution functors $\mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}^+(\mathcal{A})$ defined as follows.

1. Pick a projective resolution of every object in \mathcal{A} .
2. Pick a lift of every morphism of \mathcal{A} , and take equivalence classes.

This functor has

3.9. Mapping cones

Definition 85 (shift functor). For any chain complex C_\bullet and any $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, define the k -shifted chain complex $C_\bullet[k]$ by

$$C[k]_i = C_{k+i}; \quad d_i^{C[k]} = (-1)^k d_{i+k}^C.$$

Definition 86 (mapping cone). Let $f: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be a chain map. Define a new complex $\text{cone}(f)$ as follows.

- For each n , define

$$\text{cone}(f)_n = C_{n-1} \oplus D_n.$$

- Define $d_n^{\text{cone}(f)}$ by

$$d_n^{\text{cone}(f)} = \begin{pmatrix} -d_{n-1}^C & 0 \\ -f_{n-1} & d_n^D \end{pmatrix},$$

which is shorthand for

$$d_n^{\text{cone}(f)}(x_{n-1}, y_n) = (-d_{n-1}^C x_{n-1}, d_n^D y_n - f_{n-1} x_{n-1}).$$

Lemma 87. The complex $\text{cone}(f)$ naturally fits into a short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow D_\bullet \xrightarrow{\iota} \text{cone}(f)_\bullet \xrightarrow{\pi} C[-1]_\bullet \longrightarrow 0.$$

Proof. We need to specify ι and π . The morphism ι is the usual injection; the morphism π is given by minus the usual projection. \square

Corollary 88. Let $f_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be a morphism of chain complexes. Then f is a quasi-isomorphism if and only if $\text{cone}(f)$ is an exact complex.

Proof. By [Corollary 52](#), we get a long exact sequence

$$\cdots \rightarrow H_n(C) \xrightarrow{\delta} H_n(D) \rightarrow H_n(\text{cone}(f)) \rightarrow H_{n-1}(C) \rightarrow \cdots.$$

We still need to check that $\delta = H_n(f)$. This is not hard to see; picking $x \in \ker d^X$, the

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

zig-zag defining δ goes as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & x & \\
 & & & \downarrow & \\
 & & (x, 0) & \mapsto & -x \\
 & & \downarrow & & \\
 f(x) & \mapsto & (0, f(x)) & & \\
 \downarrow & & & & \\
 [f(x)] & & & &
 \end{array}$$

If $\text{cone}(f)$ is exact, then we get a very short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow H_n(X) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(Y) \longrightarrow 0$$

implying that $H_n(f)$ must be an isomorphism. Conversely, if $H_n(f)$ is an isomorphism for all n , then the maps to and from $H_n(\text{cone}(f))$ must be the zero maps, implying $H_n(\text{cone}(f)) = 0$ by exactness. \square

Proposition 89. Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category, and let C_\bullet be a chain complex in \mathcal{A} . Let P_\bullet be a bounded below chain complex of projectives. Then any quasi-isomorphism $g: P_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$ has a quasi-inverse.

Proof. First we show that any morphism from a projective, bounded below complex into an exact complex is homotopic to zero. We do so by constructing a homotopy.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \cdots & P_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & P_0 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & 0 & \cdots \\
 & \downarrow & \swarrow h_1 & \downarrow & \swarrow h_0 & \downarrow & \\
 \cdots & C_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C_0 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C_{-1} & \cdots
 \end{array}$$

Consider the following solid commuting diagram, where K is the kernel of d_1^C and $r = f_1 - h_0 \circ d_1^P$ is *not* the map f_1 .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & P_1 & & \\
 & \swarrow \exists h_1 & \downarrow r & \searrow 0 & \\
 C_2 & \xrightarrow{d_2^C} & C_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1^C} & C_0 \\
 & \nearrow K & \downarrow & &
 \end{array}$$

Because

$$\begin{aligned} d_1^C \circ r &= d_1^C \circ f_1 - d_1^C \circ h_0 \circ d_1^P \\ &= d_1^C \circ f_1 - d_1^C \circ f_1 \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

the morphism r factors through K . This gives us a morphism from a projective onto the target of an epimorphism, which we can lift to the source. This is what we call h_1 .

It remains to check that h_1 is a homotopy from f to 0. Plugging in, we find

$$\begin{aligned} d_2^C \circ h_1 + h_0 \circ d_1^P &= r + h_0 \circ d_1^P \\ &= f_1 \end{aligned}$$

as required.

Iterating this process, we get a homotopy between 0 and f .

Now let $f: C_\bullet \rightarrow P_\bullet$ be a quasi-isomorphism, where P_\bullet is a bounded-below projective complex. Since f is a quasi-isomorphism, $\text{cone}(f)$ is exact, which means that $\iota: P \rightarrow \text{cone}(f)$ is homotopic to the zero morphism.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} P_{i+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{i+1}^P} & P_i & \xrightarrow{d_i^P} & P_{i-1} \\ \downarrow \scriptstyle 0 & \nwarrow \scriptstyle \tilde{h}_i & \downarrow \scriptstyle 0 & \nwarrow \scriptstyle \tilde{h}_{i-1} & \downarrow \scriptstyle 0 \\ C_i \oplus P_{i+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{i+1}^{\text{cone}(f)}} & C_{i-1} \oplus P_i & \xrightarrow{d_i^{\text{cone}(f)}} & C_{i-2} \oplus P_{i-1} \end{array}$$

That is, there exist $\tilde{h}_i: P_i \rightarrow \text{cone}(f)_{i+1}$ such that

$$d_{i+1}^{\text{cone}(f)} \circ \tilde{h}_i + \tilde{h}_{i-1} \circ d_i^P = \iota. \quad (3.3)$$

Writing \tilde{h}_i in components as $\tilde{h}_i = (\beta_i, \gamma_i)$, where

$$\beta_i: P_i \rightarrow C_i \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_i: P_{i-1} \rightarrow P_i,$$

we find what looks tantalizingly like a chain map $\beta_\bullet: P_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$. Indeed, writing [Equation 3.3](#) in components, we find the following.

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} -d_i^C & 0 \\ -f_i & d_{i+1}^P \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta_i \\ \gamma_i \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \beta_{i-1} \\ \gamma_{i-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} d_i^P \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \text{id}_{P_i} \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} -d_i^C \circ \beta_i + \beta_{i-1} \circ d_i^P \\ -f_i \circ \beta_i + d_{i+1}^P \circ \gamma_i + \gamma_{i-1} \circ d_i^P \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \text{id}_{P_i} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

The first line tells us that β is a chain map. The second line tells us that³

$$d_{i+1}^P \circ \gamma_i + \gamma_{i-1} \circ d_i^P = \text{id}_{P_i} - f_i \circ \beta_i,$$

i.e. that γ is a homotopy $\text{id}_{P_i} \sim f_i \circ \beta_i$. But homology collapses homotopic maps, so

$$H_n(\text{id}_{P_i}) = H_n(f_i) \circ H_n(\beta_i),$$

which implies that

$$H_n(\beta_i) = H_n(f_i)^{-1}.$$

□

3.10. Localization at weak equivalences: a love story

Hopefully, the reader will now agree that chain complexes are interesting enough to study, and that given a chain complex, the level-wise homology (and therefore the slippery notion of quasi-isomorphism) is an interesting invariant. Of course, one considers the category of chain complexes, but this category has the annoying feature that quasi-isomorphisms do not necessarily have quasi-inverses. That is, it is difficult to view quasi-isomorphism as a notion of equivalence because it is not invertible.

The way out of this is to replace the category $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ by a category in which all quasi-isomorphisms have quasi-inverses. There is a fiddly and conceptually unclear way to do that, namely by forming the categorical localization.

$$\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})[\{\text{quasi-isomorphisms}\}^{-1}].$$

Unfortunately, localization is not at all a trivial process, and one can get hurt if one is not careful. For that reason, actually constructing the above localization and then working with it is not a profitable approach to take.

However, note that we can get what we want by making a more draconian identification: collapsing all homotopy equivalences. Homotopy equivalence is friendlier than quasi-isomorphism in the sense that one can take the quotient by it; that is, there is a well-defined additive functor

$$\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{A})$$

which is the identity on objects and sends morphisms to their equivalence classes modulo homotopy; this sends precisely homotopy equivalences to isomorphisms. By

Definition 90 (derived functor). Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a functor between abelian categories.

³Actually, it doesn't tell us this, but I suspect that it would if I were a little better at algebra.

- If F is right exact and \mathcal{A} has enough projectives, we declare the left derived functor to be the homological δ -functor $\{L_n F\}$ defined by

$$L_n F = \mathcal{A} \xrightarrow{P} \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})) \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{B})) \xrightarrow{H_n} \mathcal{B}$$

where $P: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}))$ is a projective resolution functor.

- If F is left exact and \mathcal{A} has enough injectives, we define the right derived functor to be the cohomological δ -functor

$$R^n F(X) = H^n \circ F \circ Q$$

where Q is an injective resolution functor.

Definition 91 (homological δ -functor). A homological δ -functor between abelian categories \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{B} consists of the following data.

1. For each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, an additive functor

$$T_n: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}.$$

2. For every short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$

in \mathcal{A} and for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, a morphism

$$\delta_n: T_n(C) \rightarrow T_{n-1}(A).$$

This data is subject to the following conditions.

1. For $n < 0$, we have $T_n = 0$.
2. For every short exact sequence as above, there is a long exact sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & T_{n+1}(C) & & \\ & & & & \searrow \delta & & \\ & \nearrow & T_n(A) & \xrightarrow{T_n(f)} & T_n(B) & \xrightarrow{T_n(g)} & T_n(C) \\ & & & & \searrow \delta & & \\ & \nearrow & T_{n-1}(A) & \xrightarrow{T_{n-1}(f)} & T_{n-1}(B) & \xrightarrow{T_{n-1}(g)} & T_{n-1}(C) \\ & & & & \searrow \delta & & \\ & \nearrow & T_{n-2}(A) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & & \end{array}$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

3. For every morphism of short exact sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & B & \longrightarrow & C \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A' & \longrightarrow & B' & \longrightarrow & C' \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

and every n , the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T_n(C) & \xrightarrow{\delta_n} & T_{n-1}(A) \\ T_n(h) \downarrow & & \downarrow T_n(f) \\ T_n(C') & \xrightarrow{\delta_n} & T_{n-1}(A') \end{array}$$

commutes; that is, a morphism of short exact sequences leads to a morphism of long exact sequences.

A morphism $S \rightarrow T$ of δ -functors consists of, for each n , a natural transformation $S_n \rightarrow T_n$ compatible with the δ .

This seems like an inelegant definition, and indeed it is.

Example 92. The prototypical example of a homological δ -functor is homology: the collection $H_n: \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$, together with the collection of connecting homomorphisms, is a homological delta-functor. In fact, the most interesting homological delta functors called *derived functors*, come from homology.

Definition 93 (cohomological δ -functors). Dual to [Definition 91](#).

We still need to show that derived functors are in fact homological delta-functors.

Theorem 94. For any right exact functor $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ between abelian categories \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{B} , where \mathcal{A} has enough projectives, the left derived functor $\{L_n F\}$ is a homological δ -functor.

Proof. We check each condition separately.

1. $L_n F$ is computed by taking the n th homology of a chain complex concentrated in positive degree.
2. Start with a short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A \hookrightarrow B \twoheadrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$

in \mathcal{A} .

We compute the image of this sequence under the derived functors $L_n F$ by using our chosen projective resolution functor to find projective resolutions and lift

maps, and take homology. In general, we cannot be guaranteed that we can lift our exact sequence up to an exact sequence of projective resolutions

$$0 \longrightarrow P_{\bullet}^A \hookrightarrow P_{\bullet}^B \twoheadrightarrow P_{\bullet}^C \longrightarrow 0 .$$

However, we have shown that, up to isomorphism, it doesn't matter which projective resolutions we choose, so we can choose those given by the horseshoe lemma (Theorem 80), giving us such an exact sequence. Applying F then gives us another exact sequence, and taking homology gives a long exact sequence.

3. We do the same thing, but now apply the horseshoe lemma on morphisms (Theorem 81).

□

Proposition 95. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a right exact functor between abelian categories. We have that

$$L_0 F \simeq F.$$

Proof. Let $P_{\bullet} \rightarrow X$ be a projective resolution. By Lemma 79, the following sequence is exact.

$$P_1 \xrightarrow{f} P_0 \twoheadrightarrow X \longrightarrow 0$$

Since F is right exact, the following sequence is exact.

$$F(P_1) \xrightarrow{F(f)} F(P_0) \twoheadrightarrow F(X) \longrightarrow 0$$

This tells us that $F(X) \simeq \text{coker}(F(f))$. But

$$\text{coker}(H(f)) \simeq H_0(P_{\bullet}) = L_0 F(X).$$

□

Given a right exact functor F , the above theorem shows that, at the lowest level, the left derived functor gives F itself. It turns out that $\{L_n F\}$ is the *universal* homological δ -functor with this property:

Proposition 96. Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a right exact functor between abelian categories where \mathcal{A} has enough projectives, let $\{T_n\}$ be a homological δ -functor, and let $\phi_0: T_0 \Rightarrow F = L_0 F$ be a natural transformation. Then there exists a unique lift of ϕ_0 to a morphism $\{\phi_i: T_i \rightarrow L_i F\}$.

Proof. First we construct $\phi_1: T_1 \Rightarrow L_1 F$. For each object $A \in \mathcal{A}$, pick a projective which surjects onto it and take a kernel, giving the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow K \hookrightarrow P \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

Applying each of our homological δ -functors and using the fact that $L_i F P = 0$ for $i > 0$, we get the following data.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 T_1 A & \xrightarrow{\delta} & T_0 K & \longrightarrow & T_0 P & \longrightarrow & T_0 A \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow (\phi_0)_K & & \downarrow (\phi_0)_P & & \downarrow (\phi_0)_A \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & L_1 F A & \xrightarrow{\delta} & F K & \longrightarrow & F P \longrightarrow F A \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

Since $L_1 F A \rightarrow F K$ is a kernel of $T_0 K \rightarrow T_0 P$, we get a unique map $T_1 A \rightarrow L_1 F A$, which we declare to be $(\phi_1)_A$.

It remains to show that these are really the components of a natural transformation. Let $f: A \rightarrow A'$ be a morphism in \mathcal{A} . Consider any induced morphisms of short exact sequences.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & K & \hookrightarrow & P & \twoheadrightarrow & A \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & K' & \hookrightarrow & P' & \twoheadrightarrow & A' \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

Since $\{L_n F\}$ and $\{T_n\}$ are homological δ -functors, this gives us the following cube, where the components $(\phi_1)_A$ and $(\phi_1)_{A'}$ are dashed. All faces except the one on the left commute by definition.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & T_1 A' & \longrightarrow & T_0 K' \\
 & \nearrow T_1 f & \downarrow (\phi_1)_{A'} & \nearrow & \downarrow \\
 T_1 A & \longrightarrow & T_0 K & \longrightarrow & T_0 P \\
 \downarrow (\phi_1)_A & \nearrow L_1 F f & \downarrow & \nearrow \delta & \downarrow \\
 L_1 F A & \longrightarrow & F K & \longrightarrow & F P
 \end{array}$$

In order to check that the $(\phi_1)_A$ form the components of a natural transformation, we need to check that the left face of the above cube commutes. Because $\delta: L_1 F A' \rightarrow F K'$ is a monomorphism, it suffices to check that

$$\delta \circ (\phi_1)_{A'} \circ T_1 f = \delta \circ L_1 F f \circ (\phi_1)_A.$$

But given the commutativity of the other faces of the cube, this is clear.

We now continue inductively, constructing ϕ_2 , etc.

The last step is to show that the collection $\{\phi_n\}$ is really a morphism of homological δ -functors, i.e. that for any short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow A'' \hookrightarrow A \twoheadrightarrow A' \longrightarrow 0$$

the squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T_n A'' & \xrightarrow{\delta} & T_{n-1} A' \\ (\phi_n)_{A''} \downarrow & & \downarrow (\phi_{n-1})_{A'} \\ L_n F A'' & \xrightarrow{\delta} & L_{n-1} F A' \end{array}$$

commute

□

3.11. Double complexes

Given any abelian category \mathcal{A} , we have considered the category of chain complexes in \mathcal{A} , and shown (in [Theorem 41](#)) that this is an abelian category. It is therefore natural to consider chain complexes in the category of chain complexes.

$$\left(\cdots \longrightarrow M_{1,\bullet} \longrightarrow M_{0,\bullet} \longrightarrow M_{-1,\bullet} \longrightarrow \cdots \right) \in \mathbf{Ch}(\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})),$$

Such a beast is a lattice of commuting squares.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \cdots & \longrightarrow & M_{i-1,j} & \longrightarrow & M_{i,j} & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \cdots & \longrightarrow & M_{i-1,j-1} & \longrightarrow & M_{i,j-1} & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \end{array}$$

However, when manipulating these complexes it turns out to be convenient to do something slightly different, namely work with complexes whose squares anticommute rather than commute. This is not a fundamental difference, as one can make from any lattice of commuting squares a lattice of anticommuting squares by multiplying the differentials of every other column by -1 . This is known as the *sign trick*.

Definition 97 (double complex). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. A double complex in \mathcal{A} consists of an array $M_{i,j}$ of objects together with, for every i and $j \in \mathbb{Z}$, morphisms

$$d_{i,j}^h: M_{i,j} \rightarrow M_{i-1,j}, \quad d_{i,j}^v: M_{i,j} \rightarrow M_{i,j-1}$$

subject to the following conditions.

$$\bullet \quad (d^h)^2 = 0$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

- $(d^v)^2 = 0$
- $d^h \circ d^v + d^v \circ d^h = 0$

We say that a double complex is $M_{\bullet,\bullet}$ is *first-quadrant* if $M_{i,j} = 0$ for $i, j < 0$.

Given any complex of complexes, one can construct a double complex by multiplying the differentials in every other row or column by -1 .

Definition 98 (total complex). Let $M_{\bullet,\bullet}$ be a first-quadrant⁴ double complex. The total complex $\text{Tot}(M)_{\bullet}$ is defined level-wise by

$$\text{Tot}(M)_n = \bigoplus_{i+j=n} M_{i,j},$$

with differential given by $d_{\text{Tot}} = d + \delta$.

Lemma 99. The total complex really is a complex, i.e.

$$d_{\text{Tot}} \circ d_{\text{Tot}} = 0.$$

Proof. Hand-wavily, we have

$$d_{\text{Tot}} \circ d_{\text{Tot}} = (d + \delta) \circ (d + \delta) = d^2 + d \circ \delta + \delta \circ d + \delta^2 = 0.$$

□

Theorem 100. Let $M_{i,j}$ be a first-quadrant double complex. Then if either the rows $M_{\bullet,j}$ or the columns $M_{i,\bullet}$ are exact, then the total complex $\text{Tot}(M)_{\bullet}$ is exact.

Proof. Let $M_{i,j}$ be a first-quadrant double complex with exact rows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & M_{3,0} & & \cdots & & \\
 & & \downarrow d_{3,0} & & & & \\
 & & M_{2,0} & \xleftarrow{\delta_{2,1}} & M_{2,1} & & \cdots \\
 & & \downarrow d_{2,0} & & \downarrow d_{2,1} & & \\
 & & M_{1,0} & \xleftarrow{\delta_{1,1}} & M_{1,1} & \xleftarrow{\delta_{1,2}} & M_{1,2} & \cdots \\
 & & \downarrow d_{1,0} & & \downarrow d_{1,1} & & \downarrow d_{1,2} & \\
 & & M_{0,0} & \xleftarrow{\delta_{0,1}} & M_{0,1} & \xleftarrow{\delta_{0,2}} & M_{0,2} & \xleftarrow{\delta_{0,3}} & M_{0,3}
 \end{array}$$

⁴This restriction is not strictly necessary, but then one has to deal with infinite direct sums, and hence must decide whether one wants the direct sum or the direct product. We only need first-quadrant double complexes, so all of our sums will be finite.

We want to show that the total complex

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 M_{3,0} \oplus M_{2,1} \oplus M_{1,2} \oplus M_{0,3} & = & \text{Tot}(M)_3 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 M_{2,0} \oplus M_{1,1} \oplus M_{0,2} & = & \text{Tot}(M)_2 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 M_{1,0} \oplus M_{0,1} & = & \text{Tot}(M)_1 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 M_{0,0} & = & \text{Tot}(M)_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & & 0
 \end{array}$$

is exact.

The proof is inductive on the degree of the total complex. At level 0 there is nothing to show; the morphism d_1^{Tot} is manifestly surjective since $\delta_{0,1}$ is. Since numbers greater than 1 are for all intents and purposes interchangeable, we give the inductive step for $n = 2$.

We have a triple $m = (m_{2,0}, m_{1,1}, m_{0,2}) \in \text{Tot}(M)_2$ which maps to 0 under d_2^{Tot} ; that is,

$$d_{2,0}m_{2,0} + \delta_{1,1}m_{1,1} = 0, \quad d_{1,1}m_{1,1} + \delta_{0,2}m_{0,2} = 0.$$

Our goal is to find

$$n = (n_{3,0}, n_{2,1}, n_{1,2}, n_{0,3}) \in \text{Tot}(M)_3$$

such that $d_3^{\text{Tot}}n = m$.

It turns out that we can make our lives easier by choosing $n_{3,0} = 0$. By exactness, we can always $n_{2,1}$ such that $\delta n_{2,1} = m_{2,0}$. Thus, by anti-commutativity,

$$d\delta n_{2,1} = -\delta dn_{2,1}.$$

But $\delta n_{2,1} = m_{2,0} = -\delta m_{1,1}$, so

$$\delta(m_{1,1} - dn_{2,1}) = 0.$$

This means that $m_{1,1} - dn_{2,1} \in \ker \delta$, i.e. that there exists $n_{1,2}$ such that $\delta n_{1,2} = m_{1,1} - dn_{2,1}$. Thus

$$d\delta n_{1,2} = dm_{1,1} = -\delta m_{0,2}.$$

But

$$d\delta n_{1,2} = -\delta dn_{1,2},$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

so

$$\delta(m_{0,2} - dn_{1,2}) = 0.$$

Now we repeat this process, finding $n_{1,2}$ such that

$$\delta n_{1,2} = m_{1,1} - dn_{2,1},$$

and $n_{0,3}$ such that

$$\delta n_{0,3} = m_{0,2} - dn_{1,2}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} d^{\text{Tot}}(n_{3,0} + n_{2,1} + n_{1,2} + n_{0,3}) &= 0 + (d + \delta)n_{2,1} + (d + \delta)n_{1,2} + (d + \delta)n_{0,3} \\ &= 0 + 0 + m_{2,0} + dn_{2,1} + (m_{1,1} - dn_{2,1}) + dn_{1,2} + (m_{0,2} - dn_{1,2}) + 0 \\ &= m_{2,0} + m_{1,1} + m_{0,2} \end{aligned}$$

as required. \square

Example 101. Let $f_\bullet: C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ be a morphism of chain complexes. Form from this a double complex by multiplying the differential of C_\bullet by -1 and padding by zeroes on either side.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ 0 & \longleftarrow & D_3 & \xleftarrow{f_3} & C_3 & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ & & d_3^D \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_3^C & & \\ 0 & \longleftarrow & D_2 & \xleftarrow{f_2} & C_2 & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ & & d_2^D \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_2^C & & \\ 0 & \longleftarrow & D_1 & \xleftarrow{f_1} & C_1 & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ & & d_1^D \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_1^C & & \\ 0 & \longleftarrow & D_0 & \xleftarrow{f_0} & C_0 & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ & & d_0^D \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_0^C & & \\ 0 & \longleftarrow & D_{-1} & \xleftarrow{f_{-1}} & C_{-1} & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \end{array}$$

The total complex of this is simply $\text{cone}(f)$.

Now suppose that f_\bullet is an isomorphism, so the rows are exact. Then by [Theorem 100](#), $\text{Tot}(f) = \text{cone}(f)$ is exact. We have already seen this (in one direction) in [Corollary 88](#).

Consider any morphism α in $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}))$ to a complex concentrated in degree 0. We

can view this in two ways.

- As a chain

$$\cdots \longrightarrow C_{2,\bullet} \longrightarrow C_{1,\bullet} \longrightarrow C_{0,\bullet} \xrightarrow{\alpha} D_{\bullet}$$

hence (by inserting appropriate minus signs) a double complex $C_{\bullet,\bullet}^D$;

- As a morphism between double complexes, hence between totalizations

$$\mathrm{Tot}(\alpha)_{\bullet} : \mathrm{Tot}(C)_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Tot}(D)_{\bullet}.$$

Lemma 102. These two points of view agree in the sense that

$$\mathrm{Tot}(C^D) = \mathrm{Cone}(\mathrm{Tot}(\alpha)).$$

Proof. Write down the definitions. □

Theorem 103. Let $A_{\bullet} \in \mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$, and let

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots & \longrightarrow & M_{2,\bullet} & \longrightarrow & M_{1,\bullet} & \longrightarrow & M_{0,\bullet} \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{\bullet} \\ \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & A_{\bullet} \end{array}$$

be a resolution of A_{\bullet} . Then $\mathrm{Tot}(M)$ is quasi-isomorphic to A .

Proof. The sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow M_{2,\bullet} \longrightarrow M_{1,\bullet} \longrightarrow M_{0,\bullet} \longrightarrow A_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact. By [Theorem 100](#), the total complex $\mathrm{Tot}(M^A)$ is exact. But by [Lemma 102](#) the total complex is equivalently the cone of α_{\bullet} . However, we have seen (in [Corollary 88](#)) that exactness of $\mathrm{cone}(\alpha_{\bullet})$ means that α_{\bullet} is a quasi-isomorphism. □

Corollary 104. Let

$$\cdots \longrightarrow M_{2,\bullet} \longrightarrow M_{1,\bullet} \longrightarrow M_{0,\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

be a complex in $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}))$ such that $H_0(M_{i,\bullet}) = 0$ for $i \neq 0$. Then $\mathrm{Tot}(M)$ is quasi-isomorphic to the sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow H_0(M_{2,\bullet}) \longrightarrow H_0(M_{1,\bullet}) \longrightarrow H_0(M_{0,\bullet}) \longrightarrow 0$$

Proof. For each i we can write

$$H_0(M_{i,\bullet}) = \mathrm{coker} \, d_1^{M_i}.$$

3. Homological algebra in abelian categories

In particular, we have a double complex

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 M_{0,3} & \longleftarrow & M_{1,3} & \longleftarrow & M_{2,3} & \longleftarrow & M_{3,3} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 M_{0,2} & \longleftarrow & M_{1,2} & \longleftarrow & M_{2,2} & \longleftarrow & M_{3,2} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 M_{0,1} & \longleftarrow & M_{1,1} & \longleftarrow & M_{2,1} & \longleftarrow & M_{3,1} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 M_{0,0} & \longleftarrow & M_{1,0} & \longleftarrow & M_{2,0} & \longleftarrow & M_{3,0} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 H_0(M_{0,\bullet}) & \longleftarrow & H_0(M_{1,\bullet}) & \longleftarrow & H_0(M_{2,\bullet}) & \longleftarrow & H_0(M_{3,\bullet}) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & & 0 & & 0 & & 0
 \end{array}$$

Flipping along the main diagonal, we have the following resolution.

$$M_{\bullet,2} \longrightarrow M_{\bullet,1} \longrightarrow M_{\bullet,0} \longrightarrow H_0(M_{\bullet,\bullet})$$

Now [Theorem 103](#) gives us the result we want. \square

3.12. Tensor-hom adjunction for chain complexes

In a general abelian category, there is no notion of a tensor product. However, many interesting abelian categories carry tensor products, and we would like to be able to talk about them. In this section, we let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category and let

$$- \otimes -: \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \otimes \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{H},$$

be an additive functor, where \mathcal{H} is some abelian category equipped with an exact functor to \mathbf{Ab} . Further suppose that

Definition 105 (tensor product of chain complexes). Let C_{\bullet}, D_{\bullet} be chain complexes in \mathcal{A} . We define the tensor product of C_{\bullet} and D_{\bullet} by

$$(C \otimes D)_{\bullet} = \text{Tot}(C_{\bullet} \otimes D_{\bullet}),$$

where $\text{Tot}(C_{\bullet} \otimes D_{\bullet})$ is the totalization of the double complex $C_{\bullet} \otimes D_{\bullet}$.

Definition 106 (internal hom). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category with an internal hom functor (for example, a category of modules over a commutative ring), and let C_{\bullet}, D_{\bullet} be

chain complexes in \mathcal{A} . We have

3.13. The Künneth formula

This section takes place in $R\text{-Mod}$, where R is a PID. For example, everything we are saying holds in \mathbf{Ab} .

Lemma 107. Let C_\bullet be a chain complex of free R -modules with trivial differential, and let C'_\bullet be an arbitrary chain complex. Then there is an isomorphism

$$\lambda: \bigoplus_{p+q=n} H_p(C_\bullet) \otimes H_q(C'_\bullet) \cong H_n(C_\bullet \otimes C'_\bullet).$$

Proof. We write

$$Z_p = Z_p(C_\bullet), \quad B_p = B_p(C_\bullet), \quad Z'_p = Z_p(C'_\bullet), \quad B'_p = B_p(C'_\bullet),$$

The sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow Z'_q \hookrightarrow C'_q \twoheadrightarrow B'_{q-1} \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact by definition, and since $Z_p = C_p$ is by assumption free, the sequence

By definition, $Z_p = C_p$ is free. Thus the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow Z_p \otimes Z'_q \hookrightarrow Z_p \otimes C'_q \twoheadrightarrow Z_p \otimes B'_{q-1} \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact.

The differential of the tensor product complex $C_\bullet \otimes C'_\bullet$ is

$$\begin{aligned} d_n^{\text{tot}} &= \sum_{i=0}^n d_i^C \otimes \text{id}_{C_{n-i}} + (-1)^i \text{id}_{C_i} \otimes d_{n-i}^{C'} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i \text{id}_{C_i} \otimes d_{n-i}^C. \end{aligned}$$

Since C_i is by assumption free, tensoring with it doesn't change homology, and we have

$$Z_n(C_\bullet \otimes C'_\bullet) = \bigoplus_{p+q=n} Z_p \otimes Z'_q,$$

and

$$Z_n(C_\bullet \otimes C'_\bullet) = \bigoplus_{p+q=n} Z_p \otimes Z'_q,$$

□

4. Tor and ext

4.1. The Tor functor

Let R be a ring, and N a right R -module. There is an adjunction

$$- \otimes_R N : \mathbf{Mod}\text{-}R \leftrightarrow \mathbf{Ab} : \mathrm{Hom}(N, -).$$

Thus, the functor $- \otimes_R N$ preserves colimits, hence by [Proposition 59](#) is right exact. Thus, we may form the left derived functor.

Definition 108 (Tor functor). The left derived functor of $- \otimes_R N$, is called the Tor functor and denoted

$$\mathrm{Tor}_i^R(-, N).$$

Example 109. Let R be a ring, and let $r \in R$. Assume that left multiplication by r is injective, and consider the right R -module R/rR . We have the short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow R \xrightarrow{r \cdot} R \xrightarrow{\pi} R/rR \longrightarrow 0$$

exhibiting

$$0 \longrightarrow R \xrightarrow{r \cdot} R \longrightarrow 0$$

as a free resolution of R/rR . Thus we can calculate

$$\mathrm{Tor}_i^R(R/rR, N) \simeq H_i \left(0 \longrightarrow R \otimes_R N \xrightarrow{r \cdot} R \otimes_R N \longrightarrow 0 \right)$$

That is, we have

$$\mathrm{Tor}_i^R(R/rR, N) \simeq \begin{cases} N/rN, & n = 0 \\ rN, & n = 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

There is a worrying asymmetry to our definition of Tor. The tensor product is, morally speaking, symmetric; that is, it should not matter whether we derive the first factor or the second. Pleasingly, Tor respects this.

Proposition 110. The functor Tor is balanced; that is,

$$L_i \mathrm{Hom}(M, -)(N) \simeq L_i \mathrm{Hom}(-, N)(M).$$

4.2. Ext and extensions

We know that $\text{Hom}(N, -): R\text{-Mod} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$ is left exact, so we may form right derived functors.

Definition 111 (Ext functor). Let R be a ring, and $N \in R\text{-Mod}$ an R -module. The right derived functors

$$R^i \text{Hom}(N, -): R\text{-Mod} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$$

are called the Ext functors, and denoted

$$R^i \text{Hom}(N, -) = \text{Ext}_R^i(N, -).$$

An argument very similar to that given for Tor in [Proposition 110](#) shows that Ext is balanced; that is, when computing $\text{Ext}_R^i(M, N)$, it doesn't matter whether we take an injective resolution of N or a projective resolution of M ; we will get the same result either way. Rather than spelling this out in detail, we will wait for [Chapter 6](#), where a spectral sequences argument gives the result almost immediately.

There turns out to be a deep connection between the Ext groups and extensions.

Definition 112 (extension). Let A and B be R -modules. An extension of A by B is a short exact sequence

$$\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \hookrightarrow X \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0.$$

Two extensions ξ and ξ' are said to be equivalent if there is a morphism of short exact sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \xi: & 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \hookrightarrow & X & \twoheadrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & & \downarrow \text{id}_B & & \downarrow \varphi & & \downarrow \text{id}_A & & \\ \xi': & 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \hookrightarrow & X' & \twoheadrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}.$$

The five lemma ([Theorem 55](#)) implies that φ is an isomorphism.

Let ξ be an extension of A by B . Applying the Ext functor we find an associated long exact sequence on cohomology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{Ext}^1(A, B) & \longrightarrow & \text{Ext}^1(X, B) & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\ \uparrow & & \delta & & \uparrow \\ \text{Hom}(A, B) & \longrightarrow & \text{Hom}(X, B) & \longrightarrow & \text{Hom}(B, B) \end{array}$$

Definition 113 (obstruction class). The image of id_B under the connecting homomorphism $\delta(\text{id}_B) \in \text{Ext}^1(A, B)$ is known as the obstruction class of ξ . For any extension ξ , we denote the obstruction class of ξ by $\Theta(\xi)$.

4. Tor and ext

Proposition 114. An extension ξ is split if and only if the corresponding obstruction class is zero.

Proof. We are given an extension

$$\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0 .$$

First suppose that $\Theta(\xi) = 0$. Consider the following portion of the exact sequence on cohomology.

$$\mathrm{Hom}(X, B) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(B, B) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B)$$

If $\delta: \mathrm{id} \rightarrow 0$, then there exists $a \in \mathrm{Hom}(X, B)$ such that $a \circ f = \mathrm{id}$. Thus, by the splitting lemma (Lemma 47), the sequence splits.

Now suppose that the sequence ξ splits; that is, that we have a morphism $a: A \rightarrow X$ such that $a \circ f = \mathrm{id}_B$.

$$0 \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0 .$$

\xleftarrow{a}

Since $\mathrm{Ext}^1(-, B)$ is additive, the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ext}^1(g, B)} \mathrm{Ext}^1(X, B) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ext}^1(f, B)} \mathrm{Ext}^1(B, B) \longrightarrow 0$$

$\xleftarrow{\mathrm{Ext}^1(a, B)}$

is split exact. Thus, $\mathrm{Ext}^1(g, B)$ is a monomorphism, so it has trivial kernel.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ext}^1(g, B)} & \dots \\ \uparrow & & \searrow \delta \\ \mathrm{Hom}(A, B) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Hom}(X, B) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(B, B) \end{array}$$

Exactness then forces $\delta = 0$. □

Proposition 114 explains the name *obstruction class*: $\Theta(\xi)$ is the obstruction to the splitness of ξ . The first Ext group contains some information about when a sequence can split, or fail to split.

In fact, the group $\mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B)$ parametrizes extensions of A by B .

Theorem 115. There is a natural bijection

$$\{\text{Extension classes of } \text{extensions of } A \text{ by } B\} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B); \quad [\xi] \mapsto \Theta(\xi).$$

Proof. We first show well-definedness. Let ξ and ξ' be equivalent extensions. By naturality of δ , the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{Hom}(X, B) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Hom}(B, B) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B) \\ \mathrm{id} \uparrow & & \mathrm{id} \uparrow & & \uparrow \mathrm{id} \\ \mathrm{Hom}(X, B) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Hom}(B, B) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B) \end{array}$$

Thus, $\Theta(\xi) = \Theta(\xi')$.

We now construct an explicit inverse Ψ to Φ . Since $R\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}$ has enough projectives, we can find a projective P which surjects onto A . Fix such a P and take the kernel of the surjection, giving the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow K \xrightarrow{\psi} P \xrightarrow{\gamma} A \longrightarrow 0 \quad (4.1)$$

We construct from such an exact sequence a map which takes an element of $\mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B)$ and gives an extension of A by B . First applying $\mathrm{Ext}^*(-, B)$ and taking the long exact sequence on cohomology we find the following exact fragment.

$$\mathrm{Hom}(K, B) \xrightarrow{\delta} \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ext}^1(P, B)$$

Since P is projective, the group $\mathrm{Ext}^1(P, B)$ vanishes, so $\delta: \mathrm{Hom}(K, B) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B)$ is surjective. Thus, given any $e \in \mathrm{Ext}^1(A, B)$, we can find a (not unique!) lift to $\phi \in \mathrm{Hom}(K, B)$. Take the pushout in the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & K & \xrightarrow{\psi} & P & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & A \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \phi \downarrow & & \downarrow i_P & & \\ & & B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & B \amalg_K^\phi P & & \end{array}$$

By the dual to [Lemma 49](#), the cokernel of i_B is equal to the cokernel of ψ , so we get an induced short exact sequence as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & K & \xrightarrow{\psi} & P & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & A \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \phi \downarrow & & \downarrow i_P & & \parallel \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & B \amalg_K^\phi P & \xrightarrow{\pi} & A \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

It remains to show that Ψ as defined is independent of the choice of ϕ , and that it really is an inverse to Φ . To this end, pick a different $\tilde{\phi} \in \mathrm{Hom}(N, B)$ such that $\delta(\tilde{\phi}) = e$.

4. Tor and ext

This gives us a new morphism of exact sequences as follows

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & K & \xrightarrow{\psi} & P & \xrightarrow{\gamma} \twoheadrightarrow & A \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow \tilde{\phi} & & \downarrow \tilde{i}_P & & \parallel \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \xrightarrow{\tilde{i}_B} & B \amalg_K^\phi P & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\pi}} \twoheadrightarrow & A \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array} \tag{4.2}$$

Because of the way we chose $\tilde{\phi}$, there exists some $\rho \in \text{Hom}(P, B)$ so that $\rho \circ \psi = \tilde{\phi} - \phi$. Consider the following outer square.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 K & \xrightarrow{\psi} & P \\
 \downarrow \phi & & \downarrow i_P \\
 B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & B \amalg_N^\phi P
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \searrow \tilde{i}_P - \tilde{i}_B \circ \rho \\
 \downarrow \exists! \alpha \\
 B \amalg_N^\phi P
 \end{array}
 \tag{4.3}$$

Using the commutativity of the left-hand square in [Diagram 4.2](#), we find

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\tilde{i}_P - \tilde{i}_B \circ \rho) \circ \psi &= \tilde{i}_P \circ \psi - \tilde{i}_B \circ \rho \circ \psi \\
 &= \tilde{i}_P \circ \psi - \tilde{i}_B \circ \tilde{\phi} + \tilde{i}_B \circ \phi \\
 &= \tilde{i}_B \circ \phi,
 \end{aligned}$$

so this outer square commutes, giving us the unique morphism α .

The claim that our two extensions are equivalent unwraps to the claim that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & B \amalg_K^\phi P & \xrightarrow{\pi} \twoheadrightarrow & A \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \parallel & & \downarrow \alpha & & \parallel \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \xrightarrow{\tilde{i}_B} & B \amalg_K^\phi P & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\pi}} \twoheadrightarrow & A \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

commutes. The left-hand square is the lower commuting triangle in [Diagram 4.3](#).

Reminding ourselves of the proof of [Lemma 49](#), we recall that the morphism π is defined by a pushout: it is the unique map $P \amalg_K^\phi P \rightarrow A$ such that $\pi \circ i_B = 0$ and $\pi \circ i_P = \gamma$. If we can show that $\tilde{\pi} \circ \alpha$ also satisfies these equations, then we can content ourselves that the diagram commutes. Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\tilde{\pi} \circ \alpha) \circ i_B &= \tilde{\pi} \circ \tilde{i}_B \\
 &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} (\tilde{\pi} \circ \alpha) \circ i_P &= \tilde{\pi} \circ (\tilde{i}_P - \tilde{i}_B \circ \rho) \\ &= \gamma. \end{aligned}$$

Our last job, which was really the whole point of the endeavor, is to check that the maps Φ and Ψ are inverse to each other. To that end, fix some A and B , and pick $e \in \text{Ext}^1(A, B)$. By construction of Ψ , we get a morphism of exact sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & K & \xhookrightarrow{\psi} & P & \xrightarrow{\gamma} \twoheadrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow \phi & & \downarrow i_P & & \parallel & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & B & \xhookrightarrow{i_B} & B \amalg_K^\phi P & \xrightarrow{\pi} \twoheadrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array} \quad (4.4)$$

where ϕ is an element of $\text{Hom}(K, A)$ which is mapped to by e under δ . The next step in computing $\Phi(\Psi(e))$ would now be to stick $\Psi(e)$ into the hom functor $\text{Hom}(-, B)$, and look at the image of id_B under the connecting homomorphism. However, using the fact that Ext is a homological δ -functor, we can stick the whole morphism of exact sequences [Equation 4.4](#) in and get a morphism of long exact sequences out. Picking out the square containing the relevant boundary map, we find the following.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}(B, B) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \text{Ext}^1(A, B) \\ \text{Hom}(\phi, B) \downarrow & & \parallel \\ \text{Hom}(K, B) & \xrightarrow{\delta'} & \text{Ext}^1(A, B) \end{array}$$

Chasing the identity around in both directions tells us that

$$\delta(\text{id}_B) = \delta'(\phi) = e.$$

Next, we start with an extension

$$\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xhookrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0.$$

Using the connecting homomorphism, we get a representative for the obstruction class $e = \delta(\text{id}_B) \in \text{Ext}^1(A, B)$. Using our short exact sequence from [Equation 4.1](#), we can find the fo □

Example 116. Let's do a sort of capstone computation, which pulls in just about everything we've done so far.

Consider the ring $R = \mathbb{Z}[x]$. We will compute the obstruction class of the extension

$$\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \xhookrightarrow{\cdot x} \mathbb{Z}[x]/(x^2) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0,$$

4. Tor and ext

where we have written $\mathbb{Z} = \mathbb{Z}[x]/(x)$.

At a very high level of abstraction, we compute the obstruction class of ξ by taking the long exact sequence associated to it under the right derived functor of $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}[x]}(-, \mathbb{Z})$, namely

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Ext}_{\mathbb{Z}[x]}^1(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow \cdots \\ \uparrow \qquad \qquad \qquad \delta \qquad \qquad \qquad \searrow \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}[x]}(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}[x]}(\mathbb{Z}[x]/(x^2), \mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}[x]}(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \end{array}$$

and finding the image of the identity $\text{id}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ under δ .

In order to find this long exact sequence, we need to lift ξ to a short exact sequence of projective resolutions. If we can find a projective resolution of \mathbb{Z} , the horseshoe lemma will do the rest of the work for us.

Our work on syzygies will help us here. We note that \mathbb{Z} has a single generator, namely 1, so we begin our resolution

$$\mathbb{Z}[x] \xrightarrow{\pi} \mathbb{Z}.$$

The kernel of this is the ideal (x) .

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (x) & & \\ \searrow & & \\ \mathbb{Z}[x] & \xrightarrow{\pi} & \mathbb{Z} \end{array}.$$

This again has a single generator, namely x .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & (x) & & \\ & \nearrow \cdot x & \searrow & & \\ \mathbb{Z}[x] & \xrightarrow{\cdot x} & \mathbb{Z}[x] & \xrightarrow{\pi} & \mathbb{Z} \end{array}.$$

The composition gives us our next differential. Note that multiplication by x is injective, so our projective resolution terminates.

$$\cdots \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[x] \xrightarrow{\cdot x} \mathbb{Z}[x] \longrightarrow \cdots.$$

Now we apply the horseshoe lemma. We first build our horseshoe.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \mathbb{Z}[x] & & & & \mathbb{Z}[x] \\
 & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbb{Z}[x] & & & & \mathbb{Z}[x] \\
 & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{\cdot x} & \mathbb{Z}[x]/(x^2) & \xrightarrow{\pi} & \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

The center column is then given by the direct sum of the outer columns, and the horizontal maps are the canonical injection and projection respectively.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \mathbb{Z}[x] & \hookrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}[x]^2 & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}[x] \\
 \downarrow & (3) & \downarrow \alpha & (4) & \downarrow \\
 \mathbb{Z}[x] & \hookrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}[x]^2 & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}[x] \\
 \downarrow & (1) & \downarrow \beta & (2) & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{\cdot x} & \mathbb{Z}[x]/(x^2) & \xrightarrow{\pi} & \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

The horseshoe lemma guarantees the existence of maps α and β above such that all the squares commute and the middle column forms a projective resolution, but being assured of existence is of no help to us; we must find them explicitly. We are helped tremendously that what we have found are free resolutions, so we can write the maps as matrices. We first figure out what we can about the morphisms α and β from the commutativity of the squares labelled (1)-(4).

(1) Taking the low road maps

$$1 \mapsto 1 \mapsto x,$$

while taking the high road maps

$$1 \mapsto (1, 0) \mapsto \beta(1, 0).$$

Thus,

$$\beta: (1, 0) \mapsto x$$

(2) The high road maps

$$(0, 1) \mapsto 1 \mapsto 1,$$

and the low road maps

$$(0, 1) \mapsto \beta(0, 1) \mapsto \beta(0, 1).$$

4. Tor and ext

Thus,

$$\beta: (0, 1) \mapsto 1.$$

Already, this is enough to tell us that

$$\beta(a, b) = ax + b.$$

4.2.1. The Baer sum

By definition, $\text{Ext}^1(A, B)$ has an abelian group structure. We have provided a bijection between equivalence classes of extensions of B by A and $\text{Ext}^1(A, B)$, which allows us to transport our addition law from $\text{Ext}^1(A, B)$ to the set of extension classes. However, it is not at all clear how to interpret the sum of two classes of extensions.

The group operation on the set of extension classes is known as the *Baer sum*. Let

$$\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0$$

and

$$\xi': \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f'} X' \xrightarrow{g'} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0$$

be extensions. We shall form a new extension from ξ and ξ' called the *Baer sum*, which will turn out to be in the class of $\Psi(\Phi(\xi + \xi'))$.

A word of apology: things are about to get very element-theoretic. Of course, this is not a problem thanks to the Freyd-Mitchell embedding theorem, but it's still a bit sad.

From the above extensions above, take the following pushout, and form $X'' = \ker \alpha$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{f'} & X' & & \\
 \downarrow f & \searrow \exists! f'' & \downarrow & \searrow -g' & \\
 & & X'' & & A \\
 & & \downarrow & & \\
 X & \longrightarrow & X \amalg_B X' & \xrightarrow{\exists! \alpha} & A \\
 & \searrow g & & & \\
 & & & &
 \end{array}$$

We have immediately the following morphism.

$$0 \quad B \xrightarrow{f''} X'' \quad A \quad 0$$

We would like to fill in morphisms so that we have an exact sequence. The obvious

choice of morphism $X'' \rightarrow A$, namely the composition $\alpha \circ \ker \alpha$, won't work because it's zero, so we have to define something else.

Warning: brutal element-wise computation ahead.

We have an explicit description of X'' as

$$X \amalg_B X' = X \oplus X' / \langle f(b) = f'(b) \rangle.$$

The kernel X'' is therefore the part of this which goes to zero under α , namely $(x, x') \in X \amalg_B X'$ such that

$$\alpha(x, x') = g(x) - g'(x') = 0,$$

i.e.

$$X'' = \{(x, x') \in X \amalg_B X' \mid g(x) = g'(x')\}.$$

The map f'' then simply sends $b \mapsto (f(b), 0)$, which by definition is equivalent to $(0, f'(b))$.

Note that f' is clearly injective.

Next, we define a map $g'': X'' \rightarrow A$ by sending

$$(x, x') \mapsto g(x) = g'(x').$$

This is clearly surjective since g and g' are. The kernel of g'' consists precisely of those (x, x') such that $g(x) = 0$, which is to say, such that $x = f(b)$ by exactness of ξ . Thus, we have constructed a bona fide short exact sequence

$$\xi'': \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{f''} X'' \xrightarrow{g''} A \longrightarrow 0. \quad (4.5)$$

Definition 117 (Baer sum). The extension ξ'' from Equation 4.5 is called the Baer sum of ξ and ξ' .

Lemma 118. The Baer sum is compatible with equivalences; that is, if $\xi \sim \zeta$, then $\xi + \xi' \sim \zeta + \xi'$.

Proof. Note that equivalence implies in particular \square

This means that the Baer sum descends to an addition law on equivalence classes.

Lemma 119. Let

$$\eta: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xrightarrow{i} B \oplus A \xrightarrow{p} A \longrightarrow 0$$

be a split extension. Then for any extension ξ , $\eta + \xi \sim \xi$.

Proof. \square

4. *Tor and ext*

Lemma 120. Let

$$\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xhookrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0 .$$

be an extension. Then

$$-\xi: \quad 0 \longrightarrow B \xhookrightarrow{-f} X \xrightarrow{g} \twoheadrightarrow A \longrightarrow 0$$

is the inverse under the Baer sum, i.e. $\xi + (-\xi) \sim \eta$.

5. Basic applications

You know how it is when someone asks you to ride in a terrific sports car, and then you wish you hadn't?

John Adams

5.1. Syzygy theorem

Definition 121 (Koszul complex). Let R be a commutative ring, and let $x \in R$ be an element of R such that left multiplication by x is injective on first homology. The Koszul complex of x is the complex

$$K(x) = \cdots \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow R \xrightarrow{\cdot x} R \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow \cdots,$$

concentrated in degrees 0 and 1. For elements x_1, \dots, x_n , we define the Koszul complex of x_1, \dots, x_n to be

$$K(x_1, \dots, x_n) = K(x_1) \otimes_R \cdots \otimes_R K(x_n).$$

Lemma 122. The Koszul complex $K(x)$ provides a free resolution of $R/(x)$.

Proof. There is an easy spectral sequence argument. □

5.2. Quiver representations

In the remainder of this chapter, we will apply homological algebra to the study of various classes of objects. Our main goal will be to implement the following cockamamie scheme in two contexts: quiver representations and groups.

Cockamamie Scheme 123. Given a category of algebraic objects:

1. Find a way of turning the objects in question into rings.
2. Study modules over those rings using homological algebra.
3. ???

5. Basic applications

4. Profit.

The first problem to which we will apply [Cockamamie Scheme 123](#) is the study of *quiver representations*. Unfortunately, due to time constraints, we will only get as far as step 2.

Definition 124 (quiver). A quiver Q consists of the following data.

- A finite¹ set Q_0 of *vertices*
- A finite set Q_1 of *arrows*
- A pair of maps

$$s, t: Q_1 \rightarrow Q_0$$

called the *source* and *target* maps respectively.

Definition 125 (quiver representation). Let Q be a quiver, and let k be a field. A k -linear representation V of Q consists of the following data.

- For every vertex $x \in Q_0$, a vector space V_x .
- For every arrow $\rho \in Q_1$, a k -linear map $V_{s(\rho)} \rightarrow V_{t(\rho)}$.

A morphism f between k -linear representations V and W consists of, for each vertex $x \in Q_0$ a linear map $f_x: V_x \rightarrow W_x$, such that for edge $s \in Q_1$, the square

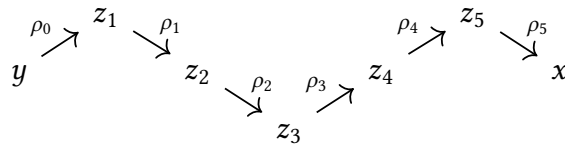
$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_{s(\rho)} & \longrightarrow & V_{t(\rho)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ W_{s(\rho)} & \longrightarrow & W_{t(\rho)} \end{array}$$

commutes.

This allows us to define a category $\text{Rep}_k(Q)$ of k -linear representations of Q .

Following our grand plan, we first find a way of turning a quiver representation into a ring.

First, we form the free category over the quiver Q , which we denote by $\mathcal{F}(Q)$; that is, the objects of the category $\mathcal{F}(Q)$ are the vertices of Q , and the morphisms $x \rightarrow y$ consist of finite chains of arrows starting at y and ending at x .



¹There is no fundamental reason for this finiteness condition, except that it will make the following analysis more convenient.

We will denote this morphism by

$$\rho_5 \rho_4 \rho_3 \rho_2 \rho_1 \rho_0.$$

We call such a finite non-empty chain a *non-trivial path*. Note that in addition to the non-trivial paths, we must formally adjoin identity arrows e_x with $s(e_x) = t(e_x) = x$; these are the *trivial paths*. Note that the notation introduced above is a good one, since in the category $\mathcal{F}(Q)$ composition is given by

$$(\rho_n \cdots \rho_1) \circ (\rho'_m \cdots \rho'_1) = \rho_n \cdots \rho_1 \rho'_m \cdots \rho'_1.$$

Definition 126 (path algebra). Let k be a field and Q a quiver. The path algebra of Q over k is, as a vector space, the free vector space over the set $\text{Mor}(\mathcal{F}(Q))$. The multiplication is given by composition

$$\rho \cdot \sigma = \begin{cases} \rho\sigma, & s(\rho) = t(\sigma) \\ 0, & s(\rho) \neq t(\sigma). \end{cases}$$

We will denote the path algebra of Q over k by kQ .

Another way of expressing the above composition rule is as follows: the multiplication of two paths ρ, σ in kQ is given by the composition $\rho \circ \sigma$ in the category $\mathcal{F}(Q)$ if the morphisms ρ and σ are composable (in the sense that ρ begins where σ ends) and zero otherwise.

From now on, we fix (arbitrarily) a bijection of Q with $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$. It is clear that

$$\text{id}_{kQ} = e_1 + \cdots + e_n.$$

Example 127. Consider the following quiver.

$$\bullet_1 \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \rho \end{array}$$

Then paths are in correspondence with natural numbers, with the empty path being e_1 . The path algebra is therefore

$$kQ \cong ke_1 \oplus k\rho \oplus k\rho\rho \oplus k\rho\rho\rho \oplus \cdots \cong k[\rho].$$

Example 128. Let Q be any quiver, and denote by $A = kQ$ its path algebra. For any vertex i and any path ρ , the multiplication law for the path algebra tells us that

$$\rho e_i = \begin{cases} \rho, & s(\rho) = i \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Therefore, the left ideal Ae_i consists of those paths which start at i . Similarly, the right

5. Basic applications

ideal $e_i A$ consists of those paths which terminate at i .

Since any path either starts at i or doesn't, we have

$$A \cong Ae_i \oplus A(1 - e_i).$$

This means (by [Proposition 15](#)) that each Ae_i is a projective module. The same argument tells us that $e_i A$ is projective for all i .

Proposition 129. Let Q be a quiver and k its path algebra. There is an equivalence of categories

$$\text{Rep}_k(Q) \xrightarrow{\cong} kQ\text{-Mod}.$$

Proof. First, we construct out of any k -linear representation V of Q a kQ -module. Our underlying space will be the vector space $\bigoplus_{i \in Q_0} V_i$, which we will also denote by V .

Now let $\rho: i \rightarrow j \in Q_0$, corresponding under the representation V to the map $f: V_i \rightarrow V_j$. We send this to the map $V \rightarrow V$ given by the matrix with f in the (i, j) th position and zeroes elsewhere. In particular, we send e_i to the matrix with a 1 in the i th place along the diagonal, and zeroes elsewhere.

It is easy to see that this assignment respects addition and composition, hence defines our functor on objects. On objects, we send $\alpha_i: V_i \rightarrow W_i$ to

$$\text{diag}(0, \dots, 0, \alpha_x^i, 0, \dots, 0).$$

It is painfully clear that this is the right thing to do.

We now construct a functor in the opposite direction. □

Proposition 130. Let M be a left A -module. We have an exact sequence of left A -modules

$$0 \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{\rho \in Q_1} Ae_{t(\rho)} \otimes_k e_{s(\rho)} M \hookrightarrow \bigoplus_{i \in Q_0} Ae_i \otimes_k e_i M \twoheadrightarrow M \longrightarrow 0,$$

exhibiting a resolution of M by projective A -modules.

Corollary 131. Let M, N be left A -modules. Then

$$\text{Ext}^i(M, N) = 0, \quad i \geq 2.$$

5.3. Group (co)homology

Next, we will apply [Cockamamie Scheme 123](#) to the study of groups. In order to do this, we need some theory.

5.3.1. The Dold-Kan correspondence

The Dold-Kan correspondence, and its stronger, better-looking cousin the Dold-Puppe correspondence, tell us roughly that studying bounded-below chain complexes is the same as studying simplicial objects.

Let $A: \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$ be a simplicial abelian group, and define

$$NA_n = \bigcap_{i=0}^{n-1} \ker(d_i) \subset A_n.$$

This becomes a chain complex when given the differential $(-1)^n d_n$. This is easy to see; we have

$$d_{n-1} \circ d_n = d_{n-1} \circ d_{n-1},$$

and the domain of this map is contained in $\ker d_{n-1}$.

Definition 132 (normalized chain complex). Let $A: \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$ be a simplicial abelian group. The normalized chain complex of A is the following chain complex.

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{(-1)^{n+2} d_{n+2}} NA_{n+1} \xrightarrow{(-1)^{n+1} d_{n+1}} NA_n \xrightarrow{(-1)^n d_n} NA_{n-1} \xrightarrow{(-1)^{n-1} d_{n-1}} \cdots$$

Definition 133 (Moore complex). Let $A: \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$ be a simplicial abelian group. The Moore complex of A is the chain complex with n -chains A_n and differential

$$\partial = \sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i d_i.$$

This is a bona fide chain complex due to the following calculation.

$$\begin{aligned} \partial^2 &= \left(\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} (-1)^j d_j \right) \circ \left(\sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i d_i \right) \\ &= \sum \sum (-1)^{i+j} d_j \circ d_i \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq j < i \leq n} (-1)^{i+j} d_j \circ d_i + \sum_{0 \leq i \leq j \leq n-1} (-1)^{i+j} d_j \circ d_i \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq j < i \leq n} (-1)^{i+j} d_{i-1} \circ d_j + \sum_{0 \leq i \leq j \leq n-1} (-1)^{i+j} d_j \circ d_i \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Following Goerss-Jardine, we denote the Moore complex of A simply by A , unless this is confusing. In this case, we will denote it by MA .

Definition 134 (alternating face maps chain modulo degeneracies). Denote by DA_n the subgroup of A_n generated by degenerate simplices. Since $\partial: A_n \rightarrow A_{n-1}$ takes degenerate

5. Basic applications

simplices to linear combinations of degenerate simplices, it descends to a chain map.

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{[\partial]} A_{n+1}/DA_{n+1} \xrightarrow{[\partial]} A_n/DA_n \xrightarrow{[\partial]} A_{n-1}/DA_{n-1} \xrightarrow{[\partial]} \cdots$$

We denote this chain complex by $A/D(A)$, and call it the alternating face maps chain modulo degeneracies.²

Lemma 135. We have the following map of chain complexes, where i is inclusion and p is projection.

$$NA \xhookrightarrow{i} A \twoheadrightarrow[p] A/D(A)$$

Proof. We need only show that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} NA_n & \hookrightarrow & A_n & \twoheadrightarrow & A_n/DA_n \\ (-1)^n d_n \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial & & \downarrow [\partial] \\ NA_{n-1} & \hookrightarrow & A_{n-1} & \twoheadrightarrow & A_{n-1}/DA_{n-1} \end{array}$$

The left-hand square commutes because all differentials except d_n vanish on everything in NA_n , and the right-hand square commutes trivially. \square

Theorem 136. The composite

$$p \circ i: NA \rightarrow A/D(A)$$

is an isomorphism of chain complexes.

Let $f: [m] \rightarrow [n]$ be a morphism in the simplex category Δ . By functoriality, f induces a map

$$N\Delta^n \rightarrow N\Delta^m.$$

In fact, this map is rather simple. Take, for example, $f = d_0: [n] \rightarrow [n-1]$. By definition, this map gives

We define a simplicial object

$$\mathbb{Z}[-]: \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathbf{Ab})$$

on objects by

$$[n] \mapsto N\mathcal{F}(\Delta^n),$$

and on morphisms by

$$f: [m] \rightarrow [n] \mapsto$$

²The nLab is responsible for this terminology.

which takes each object $[n]$ to the corresponding normalized complex on the free abelian group on the corresponding simplicial set.

We then get a nerve and realization

$$N : \mathbf{Ab}_\Delta \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathbf{Ab}) : \Gamma. \quad (5.1)$$

Theorem 137 (Dold-Kan). The adjunction in Equation 5.1 is an equivalence of categories

Proof. later, if I have time. □

Also later if time, Dold-Puppe correspondence: this works not only for \mathbf{Ab} , but for any abelian category.

5.3.2. The bar construction

This section assumes a basic knowledge of simplicial sets. We will denote by Δ_+ the extended simplex category, i.e. the simplex category which includes $[-1] = \emptyset$.

Let \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} be categories, and

$$L : \mathcal{C} \leftrightarrow \mathcal{D} : R$$

an adjunction with unit $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow RL$ and counit $\varepsilon : LR \rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$.

Recall that this data gives a comonad in \mathcal{D} , i.e. a comonoid internal to the category $\text{End}(\mathcal{D})$, or equivalently, a monoid LR internal to the category $\text{End}(\mathcal{D})^{\text{op}}$.

$$LRLR \xleftarrow{L\eta R} LR \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$$

The category Δ_+ is the free monoidal category on a monoid; that is, whenever we are given a monoidal category \mathcal{C} and a monoid $M \in \mathcal{C}$, it extends to a monoidal functor $\tilde{M} : \Delta_+ \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{*\} & \xrightarrow{[0]} & \Delta_+ \\ & \searrow M & \downarrow \exists! \tilde{M} \\ & & \mathcal{C} \end{array}$$

In particular, with $\mathcal{C} = \text{End}(\mathcal{D})^{\text{op}}$, the monoid LR extends to a monoidal functor $\Delta_+ \rightarrow \text{End}(\mathcal{D})^{\text{op}}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{*\} & \xrightarrow{[0]} & \Delta_+ \\ & \searrow M & \downarrow \exists! \\ & & \text{End}(\mathcal{D})^{\text{op}} \end{array}$$

5. Basic applications

Equivalently, this gives a functor

$$B: \Delta_+^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{End}(\mathcal{D}).$$

For each $d \in \mathcal{D}$, there is an evaluation map

$$\text{ev}_d: \text{End}(\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}.$$

Composing this with the above functor gives, for each object $d \in \mathcal{D}$, a simplicial object in \mathcal{D} .

$$S_d = \Delta_+^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{B} \text{End}(\mathcal{D}) \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_d} \mathcal{D}$$

Definition 138 (bar construction). The composition $\text{ev}_d \circ B$ is called the bar construction.

Example 139. I believe this example comes from John Baez, although I can't find the exact source at the moment.

Consider the free-forgetful adjunction

$$F: \mathbf{Set} \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Ab}: G.$$

The unit $\eta: \text{id}_{\mathbf{Set}} \rightarrow U \circ F$ has components

$$\eta_S: S \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[S]$$

which assigns any set S to the set underlying the free abelian group on it by mapping elements to their corresponding generators. The counit $\varepsilon: F \circ U \rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Ab}}$ has components

$$\varepsilon_A: \mathbb{Z}[A] \rightarrow A$$

which takes formal linear combinations of group elements to actual linear combinations of group elements.

Denoting $F \circ U$ by Z , we find the following comonad in \mathbf{Ab} , where $\nabla = F\eta U$.

$$\begin{array}{c} Z \circ Z \\ \uparrow \nabla \\ Z \\ \downarrow \varepsilon \\ \text{id}_{\mathbf{Ab}} \end{array}$$

This gives us a simplicial object in $\text{End}(\mathbf{Ab})$.

Post-composing with the evaluation functor $\text{ev}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ gives the following simplicial object in

Ab.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \xrightarrow{(ZZ\varepsilon)_{\mathbb{Z}}} & & \xrightarrow{(Z\varepsilon)_{\mathbb{Z}}} & & \\
 & & \xleftarrow{} & & \xleftarrow{\nabla_{\mathbb{Z}}} & & \\
 \cdots & \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]]] & \xleftarrow{} & \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]] & \xleftarrow{(\varepsilon Z)_{\mathbb{Z}}} & \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}] & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_{\mathbb{Z}}} \mathbb{Z} \\
 & & \xrightarrow{} & & \xrightarrow{} & & \\
 & & \xrightarrow{(\varepsilon ZZ)_{\mathbb{Z}}} & & & &
 \end{array}$$

Let's examine some of these objects in detail.

- The first object is the friendly and reassuring \mathbb{Z} , whose elements are integers. An example of an element of \mathbb{Z} is

$$17.$$

- The next object, $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]$, consists of formal linear combinations of elements of \mathbb{Z} , i.e. formal sums of the form

$$3 \times (5) + 2 \times (-1).$$

The funny notation of enclosing the elements of (the set underlying) \mathbb{Z} in parentheses will come in handy shortly.

- The next object, $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]]$, consists of formal linear combinations of elements of $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]$, i.e. formal linear combinations of formal linear combinations of integers. An element of $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]]$ looks like this.

$$3 \times (2 \times (1) + 3 \times (5)) - 4 \times (1 \times (3)).$$

- I wonder if you can figure out for yourself what the elements of $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]]]$ are.

Next, we should understand the face maps in some low degrees.

Consider some element of $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]$, say

$$3 \times (5) + 2 \times (-1)$$

The map $\varepsilon_{\mathbb{Z}} = d_0$ collapses the formal multiplication into actual multiplication:

$$\varepsilon_{\mathbb{Z}}: 3 \times (5) + 2 \times (-1) \mapsto 15 - 2 = 13.$$

Consider now some element of $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}]]$, say

$$3 \times (2 \times (1) + 3 \times (5)) - 4 \times (1 \times (3)).$$

The map $\mathbb{Z}\varepsilon_{\mathbb{Z}} = d_0$ sends this to

$$3 \times (17) - 4 \times (3);$$

5. Basic applications

that is, it strips off the inner-most parentheses. The map $(\varepsilon Z)_{\mathbb{Z}} = d_1$ sends it to

$$6 \times (1) + 9 \times (5) - 4 \times (3);$$

that is, it strips off the outer-most parentheses.

Note that, as the simplicial identities promised us, $\epsilon_{\mathbb{Z}}$ sends both of these to

$$3 \times 17 - 4 \times 3 = 6 \times 1 + 9 \times 5 - 4 \times 3 = 39.$$

In the case that the category \mathcal{D} is abelian, we can form from a simplicial object the chain complex of alternating face maps modulo degeneracies.

Definition 140 (bar complex). Let

$$F : \mathcal{A} \longleftrightarrow \mathcal{B} : G$$

be an adjunction between abelian categories, let $b \in \mathcal{B}$, and denote by $S_b : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ the bar construction of b .

The bar complex Bar_b of b is the chain complex of face maps modulo degeneracies ([Definition 134](#)) of S_b .

We will see an example of the bar complex in the next chapter.

5.3.3. Invariants and coinvariants

Now we are ready to apply [Cockamamie Scheme 123](#) to the study of groups. Here a somewhat popular method exists for turning a group G into a ring, namely by constructing the group ring $\mathbb{Z}G$. As is tradition, we will study modules over this ring.

In [Section 5.2](#), we had a nice interpretation of modules over our rings, as corresponding to k -linear representations of a quiver. We will work backwards, finding another perspective on modules over the group ring $\mathbb{Z}G$ of a group G as G -modules.

Given a group G , a G -module is a functor $\mathbf{B}G \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$. More generally, the category of such G -modules is the category $\mathbf{Fun}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{Ab})$. We will denote this category by $G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}$.

More explicitly, a G -module consists of an abelian group M , and a left G -action on M . However, since we are in \mathbf{Ab} , we have more structure immediately available to us: we can define for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, $g \in G$ and $a \in M$,

$$(ng)a = n(ga),$$

and, extending by linearity, a $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module structure on M .

Because of the obvious equivalence $G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod} \simeq \mathbb{Z}G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}$, we know that $G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}$ has

enough projectives.

Note that there is a canonical functor $\text{triv}: \mathbf{Ab} \rightarrow \mathbf{Fun}(\mathbf{BG}, \mathbf{Ab})$ which takes an abelian group to the associated constant functor.

Proposition 141. The functor triv has left adjoint

$$(-)_G: M \mapsto M_G = M / \langle g \cdot m - m \mid g \in G, m \in M \rangle$$

and right adjoint

$$(-)^G: M \mapsto M^G = \{m \in M \mid g \cdot m = m\}.$$

That is, there is an adjoint triple

$$(-)_G \longleftrightarrow \text{triv} \longleftrightarrow (-)^G$$

Proof. In each case, we exhibit a hom-set adjunction. In the first case, we need a natural isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(M_G, A) \equiv \text{Hom}_{G\text{-Mod}}(M, \text{triv } A).$$

Starting on the left with a homomorphism $\alpha: M_G \rightarrow A$, the universal property for quotients allows us to replace it by a homomorphism $\hat{\alpha}: M \rightarrow A$ such that $\hat{\alpha}(g \cdot m - m) = 0$ for all $m \in M$ and $g \in G$; that is to say, a homomorphism $\hat{\alpha}: M \rightarrow A$ such that

$$\hat{\alpha}(g \cdot m) = \hat{\alpha}(m). \quad (5.2)$$

However, in this form it is clear that we may view $\hat{\alpha}$ as a G -linear map $M \rightarrow \text{triv } A$. In fact, G -linear maps $M \rightarrow \text{triv } A$ are precisely those satisfying [Equation 5.2](#), showing that this is really an isomorphism.

The other case is similar. □

Definition 142 (invariants, coinvariants). For a G -module M , we call M^G the invariants of M and M_G the coinvariants.

Clearly, the functors taking invariants and coinvariants are interesting things that deserve to be studied in their own right, and in keeping with [Cockamamie Scheme 123](#) we could procede by deriving them. However, now something of a miracle occurs: these functors are really special cases of the hom and tensor product!

Lemma 143. We have the formulae

$$(-)^G \simeq \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G\text{-Mod}}(\mathbb{Z}, -)$$

and

$$(-)_G \simeq \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} -,$$

where in the first formula \mathbb{Z} is taken to be a trivial left $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module, and in the second a trivial right $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module.

5. Basic applications

Proof. A $\mathbb{Z}G$ -linear map $\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow M$ picks out an element of M on which G acts trivially.

Consider the element

$$1 \otimes (m - g \cdot m) \in \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} M.$$

By $\mathbb{Z}G$ -linearity, this is equal to $1 \otimes m - 1 \otimes m = 0$. \square

Lemma 143 means that we already have a good handle on the derived functors of $(-)_G$ and $(-)^G$: they are given by the Ext and Tor functors we have already seen. More specifically,

$$L_i(-)_G = \text{Tor}_i^{\mathbb{Z}G}(\mathbb{Z}, A), \quad R^i(-)^G = \text{Ext}_{\mathbb{Z}G}^i(\mathbb{Z}, A).$$

This is a stroke of luck. Had we proceeded naïvely by forming the right and left derived functors of invariants and coinvariants using **Definition 142**, we would have been stuck picking resolutions for each $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module whose value under the derived functors we wanted to compute, which would have been messy. By the balancedness of Tor and Ext, we can simply pick a resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module and get on with our lives.³

The story so far is as follows.

1. We fixed a group G and considered the category $G\text{-Mod}$ of functors $\mathbf{BG} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$.
2. We noticed that picking out the constant functor gave us a canonical functor $\mathbf{Ab} \rightarrow G\text{-Mod}$, and that taking left- and right adjoints to this gave us interesting things.
 - The right adjoint $(-)^G$ applied to a G -module A gave us the subgroup of A stabilized by G .
 - The left adjoint $(-)_G$ applied to a G -module A gave us the A modulo the stabilized subgroup.
3. Due to adjointness, these functors have interesting exactness properties, leading us to derive them.
 - Since $(-)_G$ is left adjoint, it is right exact, and we can take the left derived functors $L_i(-)_G$.
 - Since $(-)^G$ is right adjoint, it is left exact, and we can take the right derived functors $R^i(-)^G$.

4. We denote

$$L_i(-)_G = H_i(G, -), \quad R^i(-)^G = H^i(G, -),$$

and call them *group homology* and *group cohomology* respectively.

³In the case of invariants (which correspond to Ext), we need to pick a resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a *left* $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module, and in the case of coinvariants (corresponding to Tor), we need to pick a resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a *right* $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module.

5. We notice that, taking \mathbb{Z} as a trivial $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module, we have

$$A_G \equiv \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} A, \quad A^G \equiv \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(\mathbb{Z}, A),$$

and thus that

$$H_i(G, A) = \text{Tor}_i^{\mathbb{Z}G}(\mathbb{Z}, A), \quad H^i(G, A) = \text{Ext}_{\mathbb{Z}G}^i(\mathbb{Z}, A).$$

This means that (by balancedness of Tor and Ext) we can compute group homology and cohomology by taking a resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a free $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module, rather than having to take resolutions of A for all A . The bar complex gave us such a resolution.

Example 144. Let $G = \mathbb{Z}$, and denote the generator by t . Suppose we want to compute $H_*(G; A)$ and $H^*(G; A)$ for some $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module A .

Thanks to [Lemma 143](#), instead of computing a projective resolution of some specific A , we may compute a projective resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module.

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}G \xrightarrow{t-1} \mathbb{Z}G \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0$$

This gives us a free resolution $F_\bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbb{Z}$.

By definition,

$$H_i(G; A) = H_i(F_\bullet \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} A) = H_i \left(0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} A \xrightarrow{f} \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} A \longrightarrow 0 \right).$$

The map f takes $t \otimes a \mapsto a - t \otimes a$; the homology $H_0(G; A)$ is thus

$$\text{coker } f = A / \langle t \cdot a - a \mid a \in A \rangle = A_G.$$

Similarly, we have

$$H_1(G; A) = \ker f = A^G.$$

For $n > 1$, we have $H_n(G; A) = 0$.

Now turning our attention to group cohomology, we find by definition

$$H^n(G; A) = H^n \left(0 \longrightarrow \text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}G, A) \xrightarrow{g} \text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}G, A) \longrightarrow 0 \right),$$

where the map g sends

$$g: (f: t \mapsto f(t)) \mapsto (gf: t \mapsto f(t-1)).$$

5. Basic applications

Note that under the correspondence $f \mapsto f(1)$, we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}G; A) \cong A.$$

Having made this identification, g simply sends $f \mapsto tf - f$. Thus, similarly to before, we have

$$H^0(G; A) = \ker(g) = A^G, \quad H^1(G; A) = \mathrm{coker}(g) = A_G,$$

and $H^n(G; A) = 0$ for $n > 1$.

5.3.4. The bar construction for group rings

In the last section, we saw that we could compute group homology and cohomology of a group G by finding a projective resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a trivial $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module. This is nice, but computing projective resolutions is in general rather difficult.

It turns out that the bar construction (explored in [Subsection 5.3.2](#)) computes a free resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module for any group G .

Consider the functor

$$U: \mathbb{Z}G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$$

which forgets multiplication. This has left adjoint

$$\mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} -: \mathbf{Ab} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod},$$

which assigns to an abelian group A the left $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module $\mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} A$.

The unit $\eta: \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Ab}} \Rightarrow U(\mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} -)$ and counit $\varepsilon: \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} U(-) \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{Z}G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}}$ of this adjunction have components

$$\eta_A: A \rightarrow U(\mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} A); \quad a \mapsto 1 \otimes a$$

and

$$\varepsilon_M: \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} U(M) \rightarrow M; \quad g \otimes m \mapsto gm.$$

Denoting $\mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} (-) \circ U$ by Z , we find the following comonad in $\mathbb{Z}G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}$, where $\nabla = \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} (-)\eta U$.

$$\begin{array}{c} Z \circ Z \\ \uparrow \nabla \\ Z \\ \downarrow \varepsilon \\ \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{Z}G\text{-}\mathbf{Mod}} \end{array}$$

This gives us a simplicial object in $\text{End}(\mathbb{Z}G\text{-Mod})$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \xrightarrow{ZZ\varepsilon} & & \\ & & \xleftarrow{\quad} & & \\ & & \xrightarrow{\quad} & & \\ \cdots & Z \circ Z \circ Z & \xleftarrow{\quad} & Z \circ Z & \xrightarrow{Z\varepsilon} & Z & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{Z}G\text{-Mod}} \\ & & \xrightarrow{\quad} & & \xleftarrow{\nabla} & & & \\ & & \xleftarrow{\quad} & & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon Z} & & & \\ & & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon ZZ} & & & & & \end{array}$$

Evaluating on a specific $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module M then gives a simplicial object in $\mathbb{Z}G\text{-Mod}$. We continue in the special case $M = \mathbb{Z}$ taken as a trivial $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & \xrightarrow{d_0} & & & \\ & & & \xleftarrow{\quad} & & & \\ & & & \xrightarrow{\quad} & & & \\ \cdots & \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z} & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z} & \xleftarrow[\nabla]{d_0} & \mathbb{Z}G \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \\ & & & \xleftarrow{\quad} & & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \\ & & & \xrightarrow{d_2} & & & \end{array}$$

We are justified in notationally suppressing the last copy of \mathbb{Z} .

The face map d_i removes the i th copy of Z ; on a generator, we have the action of d_i given by

$$d_i: x \otimes x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n \mapsto \begin{cases} xx_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n, & i = 0 \\ x \otimes x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_i x_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n, & 0 < i < n + 1 \\ x \otimes \cdots \otimes x_{n-1}, & i = n + 1. \end{cases}$$

and the degeneracy maps s_i send

$$x \otimes x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_{n-1} \mapsto x \otimes x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_{i-1} \otimes 1 \otimes x_i \otimes \cdots \otimes x_{n-1}.$$

It is traditional to use the notation

$$x \otimes x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n = x[x_1 | \cdots | x_n].$$

This notation is the origin of the name *bar construction*.

We now form the bar complex; the objects B_n are given by

$$B_n = \mathbb{Z}G^{\otimes n} / \{\text{degenerate simplices}\};$$

that is, whenever we see something of the form

$$x[x_1 | \cdots | 1 | \cdots | x_n],$$

we set it to zero.

5. Basic applications

The elements of B_n are simply formal \mathbb{Z} -linear combinations of the $x[x_1 | \cdots | x_n]$. Therefore, we can also write

$$B_n = \bigoplus_{(g_i) \in (G \setminus \{e\})^n} \mathbb{Z}G[g_1 | \cdots | g_n], \quad n \geq 0.$$

That is, we can write the bar complex as follows.

$$\cdots \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{(g_1, g_2) \in (G \setminus \{1\})^2} \mathbb{Z}G[g_1 | g_2] \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{g \in G \setminus \{1\}} \mathbb{Z}G[g] \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}G[\cdot] \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}$$

To summarize, we have the following definition.

Definition 145 (bar complex). Let G be a group. The bar complex of G is the chain complex defined level-wise to be the free $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module

$$B_n = \bigoplus_{(g_i) \in (G \setminus \{e\})^n} \mathbb{Z}G[g_1 | \cdots | g_n],$$

where $[g_1 | \cdots | g_n]$ is simply a symbol denoting to the basis element corresponding to (g_1, \dots, g_n) . The differential is defined by

$$d([g_1 | \cdots | g_n]) = g_1[g_2 | \cdots | g_n] + \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (-1)^i [g_1 | \cdots | g_i g_{i+1} | \cdots | g_n] + (-1)^n [g_1 | \cdots | g_{n-1}].$$

Proposition 146. For any group G , the bar construction gives a free resolution of \mathbb{Z} as a (left) $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module.

Proof. We need to show that the sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow B_2 \longrightarrow B_1 \longrightarrow B_0 \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0$$

is exact, where ϵ is the augmentation map.

We do this by considering the above as a sequence of \mathbb{Z} -modules, and providing a \mathbb{Z} -linear homotopy between the identity and the zero map.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} B_2 & \longrightarrow & B_1 & \longrightarrow & B_0 & \xrightarrow{\epsilon} & \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0 \\ \downarrow \text{id} & \swarrow h_1 & \downarrow \text{id} & \swarrow h_0 & \downarrow \text{id} & \swarrow h_{-1} & \downarrow \text{id} \\ B_2 & \longrightarrow & B_1 & \longrightarrow & B_0 & \xrightarrow{\epsilon} & \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

We define

$$h_{-1}: \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow B_0; \quad n \mapsto n[\cdot].$$

5. Basic applications

Note that we immediately get a free resolution of $\mathbb{Z}G$ as a *right* $\mathbb{Z}G$ by mirroring the construction above.

Thus, we have the following general formulae:

$$H^i(G, A) = H^i \left(0 \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(B_0, A) \xrightarrow{(d_1)^*} \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(B_1, A) \xrightarrow{(d_2)^*} \cdots \right)$$

and

$$H_i(G, A) = H_i \left(\cdots \longrightarrow B_1 \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} A \longrightarrow B_0 \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}G} A \longrightarrow 0 \right)$$

5.3.5. Computations in low degrees

First homology and abelianizations

Let G be a group, and consider \mathbb{Z} as a free $\mathbb{Z}G$ -module. Let us compute $H_1(G, \mathbb{Z})$.

To compute $H_1(G, \mathbb{Z})$, consider the first few terms in the bar complex for G .

$$\cdots \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{(g_1, g_2) \in (G \setminus \{1\})^2} \mathbb{Z}G[g_1|g_2] \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{g \in G \setminus \{1\}} \mathbb{Z}G[g] \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}G[\cdot] \longrightarrow 0$$

Tensoring over $\mathbb{Z}G$ with \mathbb{Z} is the same as trivializing the action, giving us the following complex.

$$\cdots \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{(g_1, g_2) \in (G \setminus \{1\})^2} \mathbb{Z}[g_1|g_2] \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{g \in G \setminus \{1\}} \mathbb{Z}[g] \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[\cdot] \longrightarrow 0$$

The differential $d_1 \otimes \text{id}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ acts on a generator $[g]$ by sending it to

$$[\cdot]g - [\cdot] = [\cdot] - [\cdot] = 0,$$

implying that everything is a 1-cycle. The differential d_2 sends a generator $[g|h]$ to

$$[g]h - [gh] + [h] = [g] + [h] - [gh].$$

Thus, taking cycles modulo boundaries is the same as

$$\{[g] \in G\} / \langle [gh] - [g] - [h] \rangle \cong G_{\text{ab}}.$$

Thus, $H_1(G, \mathbb{Z})$ is simply the abelianization of G .

First cohomology and semidirect products

To compute $H^1(G, A)$, consider the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(\mathbb{Z}G[\cdot], A) \xrightarrow{(d_1)^*} \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(\bigoplus_{g \in G \setminus \{1\}} \mathbb{Z}G[g], A) \xrightarrow{(d_2)^*} \cdots$$

Notice immediately that since the hom functor preserves direct sums in the first slot, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G} \left(\bigoplus_{(g_i) \in (G \setminus \{1\})^n} \mathbb{Z}G[g_1 | \cdots | g_n], A \right) \cong \bigoplus_{(g_i) \in (G \setminus \{1\})^n} \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(\mathbb{Z}G[g_1 | \cdots | g_n], A)$$

An element of $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}G}(\mathbb{Z}G[g_1 | \cdots | g_n])$ is determined completely by where it sends the generator of $\mathbb{Z}G$. We can therefore re-package the RHS as consisting of functions

$$\phi: (G \setminus \{1\})^n \rightarrow A,$$

or equivalently as functions

$$\phi: G^n \rightarrow A, \quad \phi(\dots, 1, \dots) = 0.$$

The differential $d^n = (d_n)_*$ sends $\phi \mapsto d^n \phi = \phi \circ d_n$, where

$$\begin{aligned} \phi \circ d_n: (g_1, \dots, g_{n+1}) &\mapsto g_1 \phi(g_2, \dots, g_{n+1}) \\ &+ \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^i \phi(g_1, \dots, g_i g_{i+1}, \dots, g_{n+1}) \\ &+ (-1)^{n+1} \phi(g_1, \dots, g_n). \end{aligned}$$

We will denote the n th term in [Equation 5.3.5](#) by C^n ; that is, we have

$$C^n \cong \{\phi: G^n \rightarrow A \mid \phi(g_1, \dots, 1, \dots, g_n) = 0\}.$$

Let us explicitly compute $H^1(G; A)$.

The set of 1-coboundaries corresponds to functions $\psi: G \rightarrow A$ with

$$d\psi: G^2 \rightarrow A; \quad d\psi(g, h) = g\psi(h) - \psi(gh) + \psi(g) = 0,$$

i.e. functions

$$\phi: G \rightarrow A; \quad \psi(g, h) = \psi(g) + g\psi(h).$$

We will call these *crossed homomorphisms*.

5. Basic applications

The set of 1-cocycles corresponds to the image $d^0(C^0)$, i.e. those functions

$$d\phi: G \rightarrow A, \quad d\phi([g]) = g\phi([\cdot]) - \phi([\cdot]).$$

We will call these *principal crossed homomorphisms*.

Thus, in this case we have

$$H^1(G; A) = \frac{\{\text{crossed homomorphisms from } G \text{ to } A\}}{\{\text{principal crossed homomorphisms from } G \text{ to } A\}}.$$

Now suppose that A is a trivial G -module. In that case, crossed homomorphisms are simply homomorphisms $G \rightarrow A$, and principal crossed homomorphisms are zero. Thus, $H^1(G; A)$ consists of homomorphisms $G \rightarrow A$, i.e.

$$H^1(G; A) = \text{Hom}_{\text{Ab}}(G_{\text{ab}}, A).$$

Definition 147 (semidirect product). Let G be a group, and A a G -module. The semidirect product of A and G is the group whose underlying set is $A \times G$, and whose group operation is given by

$$(a, g) \cdot (a', g') = (a + ga', gg').$$

We denote the semidirect product of A and G by $A \rtimes G$.

Note that we have a short exact sequence of groups⁴

$$0 \longrightarrow A \hookrightarrow A \rtimes G \twoheadrightarrow G \longrightarrow 1.$$

Let $\sigma: A \rtimes G \rightarrow A \rtimes G$ be a group homomorphism. We say that σ *stabilizes* A and G if the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \hookrightarrow & A \rtimes G & \twoheadrightarrow & G \longrightarrow 1 \\ & & \parallel & & \downarrow \sigma & & \parallel \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \hookrightarrow & A \rtimes G & \twoheadrightarrow & G \longrightarrow 1 \end{array}$$

Given any crossed homomorphism ϕ , we get a group homomorphism σ_ϕ by the formula

$$\sigma_\phi: (a, g) \mapsto (a + \phi(g), g).$$

⁴We are cheating a bit. Since \mathbf{Grp} is not an abelian category, we have no notion of an exact sequence of groups. We trust that the reader will not be confused.

This is an easy check; we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma_\phi((a, g)(a', g')) &= \sigma_\phi(a + ga', gg') \\
 &= (a + ga' + \phi(gg'), gg') \\
 &= (a + \phi(g) + g(a' + \phi(g')), gg') \\
 &= (a + \phi(g), g)(a' + \phi(g'), g') \\
 &= \sigma_\phi(a, g)\sigma_\phi(a', g').
 \end{aligned}$$

In fact, σ_ϕ trivially stabilizes A and G . This gives us a way of turning a cocycle in $Z^1(G, A)$ into an automorphism of $A \rtimes G$ which stabilizes A and G .

Proposition 148. The map

$$\psi: Z^1(G; A) \rightarrow \text{Aut}(A \rtimes G); \quad \phi \mapsto \sigma_\phi$$

is an isomorphism onto the subgroup of $\text{Aut}(A \rtimes G)$

Proof. The fact that ψ is a homomorphism is trivial. We show that we have an inverse given by \square

This is miserable.

Second cohomology and extensions

Definition 149 (extension of a group). Let G be a group and A an abelian group. An extension of G by A is a short exact sequence of groups

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{\pi} G \longrightarrow 0.$$

Two such extensions are said to be equivalent if there is a morphism of short exact sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{i} & E & \xrightarrow{\pi} & G \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \parallel & & \downarrow \sigma & & \parallel \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{i'} & E & \xrightarrow{\pi'} & G \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

We are no longer justified in using the snake lemma to show that σ is an isomorphism, but the logic in [Example 63](#) does carry over to our current situation.

Definition 150 (split extension). An extension

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{\pi} G \longrightarrow 0$$

\xleftarrow{s}

is said to be *split* if there exists a group homomorphism $s: G \rightarrow E$ such that $\pi \circ s = \text{id}_G$.

5. Basic applications

Proposition 151. An extension of E of G by A is equivalent to the semidirect product $A \rtimes G$ if and only if it is split.

Proof. The semidirect product $A \rtimes G$ admits the extension $g \mapsto (0, g)$. Given a split extension

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xhookrightarrow{i} E \twoheadrightarrow[\pi] G \longrightarrow 0 ,$$

we can define a map

$$E \rightarrow A \rtimes G; \quad e \mapsto (e(s\pi(e)^{-1}), \pi(e)).$$

□

As the last proposition shows, in general we cannot find a section of an extension. However, since π is surjective, given any extension,

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xhookrightarrow{i} E \twoheadrightarrow[\pi] G \longrightarrow 0 ,$$

we can find at least a *set-theoretic extension* of G by A , i.e. a set-function $G \rightarrow E$ such that $\pi \circ s = e_G$.

Note that E can act on A via conjugation; if $a \in A$ and $e \in E$, then $ea e^{-1} \in A$, because

$$\begin{aligned} \pi(eae^{-1}) &= \pi(e)\pi(a)\pi(e^{-1}) \\ &= \pi(e)\pi(e)^{-1} \\ &= e_G. \end{aligned}$$

In fact, since A is abelian, it acts trivially on itself via conjugation, so it descends to an action of $G \cong E/A$ on A .

This gives a section of E relative to G . Given such a splitting, we can define for each pair $g, h \in G$ an element $f(g, h) \in A$ in the fiber over the identity $e_G \in G$ which corresponds to how far...

$$f(g, h) = s(g)s(h)s(gh)^{-1}.$$

The function $f: G \times G \rightarrow A$ is called the *factor set* of G . If s were a group homomorphism, the factor set would vanish; in general, the factor set measures how far apart $s(g)s(h)$ and $s(gh)$ are.

Lemma 152. Given an extension

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xhookrightarrow{i} E \twoheadrightarrow[\pi] G \longrightarrow 0 ,$$

we can completely recover the group law on E from the injection i and the factor set f .

Proof. As a set, E is in bijection with $A \times G$ via

$$e \mapsto (e(s\pi(e)^{-1}), \pi(e)).$$

It is easy to check that this has inverse

$$(a, g) \mapsto i(a)s(g).$$

Let $e, e' \in E$ corresponding to (a, g) and (a', g') respectively. Then

$$\begin{aligned} ee' &= i(a)s(g)i(a')s(g') \\ &= i(a)s(g)i(a')s(g)^{-1}s(g)s(g') \\ &= i(a)i(g \cdot b)s(g)s(g') \\ &= i(a + g \cdot b)i(f(g, h))s(gh) \\ &= i(a + g \cdot b + f(g, h))s(gh) \end{aligned}$$

so under the bijection $E \cong A \times G$, ee' corresponds to $(a + g \cdot b + f(g, h), gh)$. \square

Associativity now immediately implies that

$$((a, g)(b, h))(c, k) \stackrel{!}{=} (a, g)((b, h)(c, k));$$

expanding, we find that

$$(a + g \cdot b + f(g, h) + (gh) \cdot c + f(gh, k), ghk)$$

must be the same as

$$(a + g \cdot b + (gh) \cdot c + gf(h, k) + f(g, hk), ghk).$$

That means that

$$g \cdot f(h, k) - f(gh, k) + f(g, hk) - f(g, h) \stackrel{!}{=} 0.$$

Thus, the factor set f must be a 2-cocycle in $C^\bullet(G; A)$.

Our construction depends on the choice of section s . supposed we had picked a different section s' . Then the 'difference' $s'(g)s(g)^{-1}$ can be written $i(\phi(a))$ for some $a \in A$. We thus obtain a map $\phi: G \rightarrow A$.

To warm up, we do a computation.

$$s'(g)s'(h) = \dots$$

5. Basic applications

In the end, we find

$$f_{s'}(g, h) - f_s(g, h) = g \cdot \phi(h) - \phi(gh) + \phi(g).$$

Theorem 153. Let G be a group, and A a G -module. Then there is a natural bijection

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Extension classes of } G \text{ by } A \\ \text{such that the action of } G \text{ on } A \\ \text{agrees with the module structure} \end{array} \right\} \xrightarrow{\cong} H^2(G; A).$$

5.3.6. Periodicity in group homology

In this section, we will prove a combinatorial version of the following result.

Fact 154. Let G be a group. Suppose G acts freely on a sphere of dimension $2k - 1$. Then G has $2k$ -periodic group homology.

Simplicial complexes

Definition 155 (simplicial complex). Let I be a finite set. A simplicial complex K on I is a collection of subsets $K \subset \mathcal{P}(I)$ such that for $\sigma \in K$ and $\tau \subset \sigma$, $\tau \in K$.

Let K be a simplicial complex on a set I , and let K' be a simplicial complex on a set I' . A morphism $K \rightarrow K'$ is a function $f: I \rightarrow I'$ such that for every $\sigma \in K$, $f(\sigma) \in K'$.

We define a cosimplicial object in the category of simplicial complexes by

$$[n] \mapsto \mathcal{P}(\{0, \dots, n\}).$$

Taking nerves gives us, for every simplicial complex K , a simplicial set \tilde{K} .

Note that for each $\sigma \in K_n$, there are $n!$ simplices in \tilde{K}_n , one for each permutation of the elements of σ . In **Set** there is not much we can do about this; however, applying the free abelian group functor \mathcal{F} brings us to **Ab**, where we can mod out by this ambiguity.

We thus define a simplicial complex $\tilde{C}(K)$ to be the alternating face maps complex of the simplicial object $\mathcal{F} \circ \tilde{K}$.

A more concrete description of what we have just done is as follows. We have

$$\tilde{C}(K)_n = \bigoplus_{\{x_0, \dots, x_n\} \in K_n} \mathbb{Z}e_{(x_0, \dots, x_n)},$$

and the differential is

$$\sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i d_i,$$

where the face maps d_i are the \mathbb{Z} -linear extensions of the maps

$$d_i: e_{(x_0, \dots, x_n)} \mapsto e_{(x_0, \dots, \widehat{x_i}, \dots, x_n)}.$$

Now that we are in **Ab**, we can get rid of the extraneous simplices by defining

$$C(K)_n = \widetilde{C}(K)_n / \langle e_{(x_1, \dots, x_n)} - \text{sign}(\sigma) e_{(x_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, x_{\sigma(n)})} \mid \sigma \in S_n \rangle.$$

It is not hard to see that the differential on $\widetilde{C}(K)$ descends to $C(K)$.

Example 156. Let $K = \mathcal{P}(\{0, 1\})$. Then $e_{(0,1)} = -e_{(1,0)}$ in $C(K)_1$.

Let $f: K \rightarrow K$ be an automorphism of simplicial complexes K . This descends to an automorphism of chain complexes $C_\bullet(K) \rightarrow C_\bullet(K)$ defined on generators by

$$e_{(x_0, \dots, x_n)} \mapsto e_{(f(x_0), \dots, f(x_n))}.$$

Now suppose G acts trivially on

6. Spectral sequences

6.1. Motivation

Let $E_{\bullet,\bullet}$ be a first-quadrant double complex. As we saw in [Section 3.11](#), computing the homology of the total complex of such a double complex is in general difficult with no further information, for example exactness of rows or columns. Spectral sequences provide a means of calculating, among other things, the building blocks of the homology of the total complex such a double complex.

They do this via a series of successive approximations. One starts with a first-quadrant double complex $E_{\bullet,\bullet}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\
 & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & E_{0,3} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{1,3} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{2,3} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{3,3} \xleftarrow{\quad} \cdots \\
 d^v \downarrow & & & d^v \downarrow & & d^v \downarrow & & d^v \downarrow \\
 & E_{0,2} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{1,2} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{2,2} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{3,2} \xleftarrow{\quad} \cdots \\
 d^v \downarrow & & & d^v \downarrow & & d^v \downarrow & & d^v \downarrow \\
 & E_{0,1} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{1,1} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{2,1} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{3,1} \xleftarrow{\quad} \cdots \\
 d^v \downarrow & & & d^v \downarrow & & d^v \downarrow & & d^v \downarrow \\
 & E_{0,0} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{1,0} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{2,0} & \xleftarrow{d^h} & E_{3,0} \xleftarrow{\quad} \cdots
 \end{array}$$

$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow^q \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{array}$
 $\begin{array}{c} \vdots \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{array}$
 \searrow_p

One first forgets the data of the horizontal differentials (or equivalently, sets them to zero). To avoid confusion, one adds a subscript, denoting this new double complex by

6. Spectral sequences

$$E_{\bullet,\bullet}^0$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \\
 & & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \\
 \nearrow^q & & E_{0,3}^0 & E_{1,3}^0 & E_{2,3}^0 & E_{3,3}^0 & \\
 & & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \\
 & & E_{0,2}^0 & E_{1,2}^0 & E_{2,2}^0 & E_{3,2}^0 & \\
 & & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \\
 & & E_{0,1}^0 & E_{1,1}^0 & E_{2,1}^0 & E_{3,1}^0 & \\
 & & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \downarrow d^v & \\
 & & E_{0,0}^0 & E_{1,0}^0 & E_{2,0}^0 & E_{3,0}^0 & \\
 & & & & & & \searrow^p
 \end{array} \tag{6.1}$$

One then takes homology of the corresponding vertical complexes, replacing $E_{p,q}^0$ by the homology $H_q(E_{p,\bullet}^0)$. To ease notation, one writes

$$H_q(E_{p,\bullet}^0) = E_{p,q}^1.$$

The functoriality of H_q means that the maps $H_q(d^h)$ act as differentials for the rows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \\
 & & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \\
 \nearrow^q & & E_{0,3}^1 & E_{1,3}^1 & E_{2,3}^1 & E_{3,3}^1 & \leftarrow \dots \\
 & & \xleftarrow{H_3(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_3(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_3(d^h)} & & \\
 & & E_{0,2}^1 & E_{1,2}^1 & E_{2,2}^1 & E_{3,2}^1 & \leftarrow \dots \\
 & & \xleftarrow{H_2(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_2(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_2(d^h)} & & \\
 & & E_{0,1}^1 & E_{1,1}^1 & E_{2,1}^1 & E_{3,1}^1 & \leftarrow \dots \\
 & & \xleftarrow{H_1(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_1(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_1(d^h)} & & \\
 & & E_{0,0}^1 & E_{1,0}^1 & E_{2,0}^1 & E_{3,0}^1 & \leftarrow \dots \\
 & & \xleftarrow{H_0(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_0(d^h)} & \xleftarrow{H_0(d^h)} & & \\
 & & & & & & \searrow^p
 \end{array} \tag{6.2}$$

We now write $E_{p,q}^2$ for the horizontal homology $H_p(E_{\bullet,q}^1)$.

The claim is that the terms $E_{p,q}^r$ are pieces of a successive approximation of the homology of the total complex $\text{Tot}(E)$. We will prove this claim much later. However, in the particularly simple case that $E_{\bullet,\bullet}$ consists of only two nonzero adjacent columns, we have already succeeded in computing the total homology, at least up to an extension problem.

Example 157. Let E be a double complex where all but two adjacent columns are zero; that is, let E be a diagram consisting of two chain complexes $E_{0,\bullet}$ and $E_{1,\bullet}$ and a morphism $f: E_{1,\bullet} \rightarrow E_{0,\bullet}$, padded by zeroes on either side.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \vdots & & \vdots \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 E_{0,3} & \xleftarrow{f_3} & E_{1,3} \\
 d_3^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_3^1 \\
 E_{0,2} & \xleftarrow{f_2} & E_{1,2} \\
 d_2^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_2^1 \\
 E_{0,1} & \xleftarrow{f_1} & E_{1,1} \\
 d_1^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_1^1 \\
 E_{0,0} & \xleftarrow{f_0} & E_{1,0} \\
 d_0^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow -d_0^1 \\
 E_{-0,1} & \xleftarrow{f_{-1}} & E_{-1,1} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \vdots & & \vdots
 \end{array}$$

Note that we have multiplied the differentials of $E_{1,\bullet}$ by -1 so that we have a double complex. This does not enter into the discussion.

Fix some $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, and let $q = n - p$.

Let $T = \text{Tot}(E)$; that is, let $T = \text{Cone}(f)$.

Recall that $\text{Cone}(f)$ fits into the following short exact sequence,

$$0 \longrightarrow E_{\bullet,1} \hookrightarrow \text{cone}(f)_{\bullet} \twoheadrightarrow E_{\bullet,0}[-1] \longrightarrow 0$$

6. Spectral sequences

and that this gives us the following long exact sequence on homology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_n(E_{\bullet,0}) \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & & & \uparrow \delta \\
 & & H_n(E_{\bullet,1}) & \longrightarrow & H_n(\text{Cone}(f)_{\bullet}) & \longrightarrow & H_{n-1}(E_{\bullet,0}) \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & & & \uparrow \delta \\
 & & H_{n-1}(E_{\bullet,1}) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & &
 \end{array}$$

Through image-kernel factorization, we get the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{coker}(H_n(f)) \hookrightarrow H_n(\text{Cone}(f)) \twoheadrightarrow \ker(H_{n-1}(f)) \longrightarrow 0$$

This is precisely the second page of the above computation; that is, we have a short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow E_{p-1,q+1}^2 \hookrightarrow H_{p+q}(T) \twoheadrightarrow E_{p,q}^2 \longrightarrow 0 .$$

6.2. Homology spectral sequences

6.2.1. Notation and terminology

Definition 158 (homology spectral sequence). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. A homology spectral sequence starting at E^a in \mathcal{A} consists of the following data.

1. A family $E_{p,q}^r$ of objects of \mathcal{A} , defined for all integers p, q , and $r \geq a$.
2. Maps

$$d_{p,q}^r: E_{p,q}^r \rightarrow E_{p-r,q+r+1}^r$$

that are differentials in the sense that $d^r \circ d^r = 0$.

3. Isomorphisms

$$E_{p,q}^{r+1} \cong \ker(d_{p,q}^r) / \text{im}(d_{p+r,q-r+1}^r)$$

between $E_{p,q}^{r+1}$ and the homology at the corresponding position of the E^r

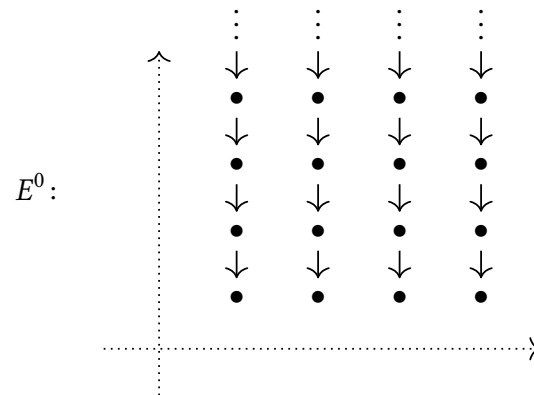
We denote such a spectral sequence by E . A morphism $E' \rightarrow E$ is a family of maps

$$f_{p,q}^r: E_{p,q}^{r'} \rightarrow E_{p,q}^r$$

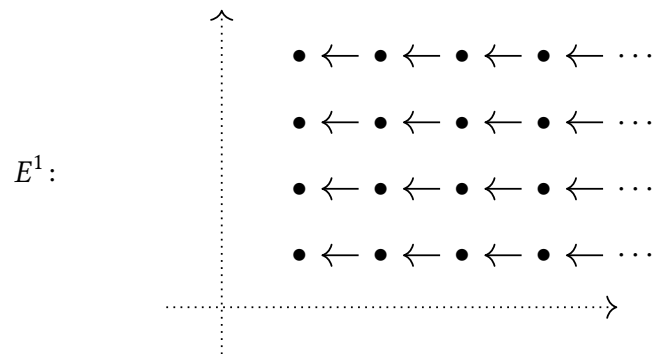
such that $d^r f^r = f^r d^r$ such that $f_{p,q}^{r+1}$ is induced on homology by $f_{p,q}^r$.

For each r , a spectral sequence E has a two-dimensional array of objects $E_{p,q}^r$. For a given r , one calls the objects $E_{p,q}^r$ the r th page of the spectral sequence E .

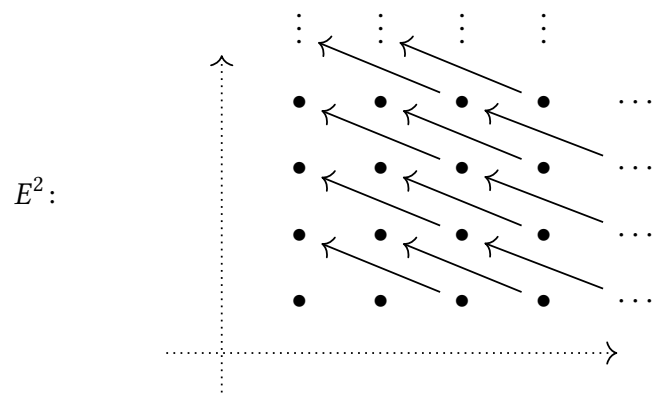
We have already seen an example of the first two pages of a spectral sequence (in [Diagram 6.1](#) and [Diagram 6.2](#)). Schematically, the differentials on the zeroth page point down.



The differentials on the first page point to the left.

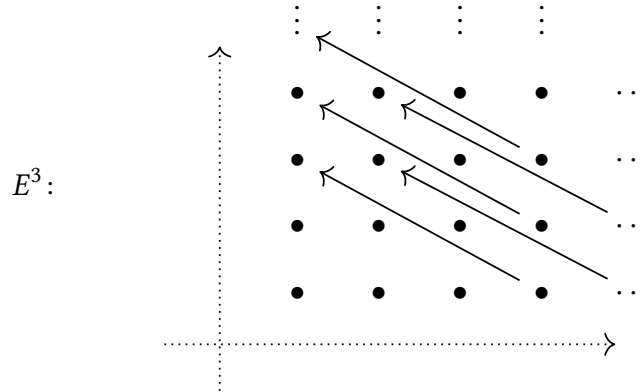


As r increases, the arrows rotate clockwise. The second page looks like this.



6. Spectral sequences

The third page looks like this.



6.2.2. Stabilization and convergence

We have so far placed no conditions on $E_{p,q}^r$. However, we will confine our study of certain classes of spectral sequences.

Definition 159 (bounded, first quadrant). Let E be a spectral sequence starting at E^a .

- We say that E is bounded if each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, there are only finitely many terms of total degree n on the a th page, i.e. terms of the form $E_{p,q}^a$ for $n = p + q$.
- We say that E is first-quadrant if $E_{p,q}^a = 0$ for $p < 0$ and $q < 0$.

Clearly, every first-quadrant spectral sequence is bounded.

Note that if a spectral sequence is bounded, then

We get $E_{p,q}^{r+1}$ by taking the homology of a complex on the r th page. If E is a first-quadrant spectral sequence, then for $r > \max(p, q + 1)$, the differential entering $E_{p,q}^r$ comes from the fourth quadrant (hence from a zero object), and the differential leaving it lands in the second quadrant (also a zero object). Thus, $E_{p,q}^{r+1} = E_{p,q}^r$.

Definition 160 (stabilize). A spectral sequence starting at E^a is said to stabilize at position (p, q) if there exists some $r \geq a$ such that $E_{p,q}^{r'} = E_{p,q}^r$ for all $r' \geq r$. In this case, we write $E_{p,q}^\infty$ for the stable value at position (p, q) .

By the argument above, each position in a first-quadrant spectral sequence eventually stabilizes. We will mostly be interested in first-quadrant spectral sequences. However, boundedness is (clearly!) sufficient to guarantee stabilization.

Suppose one has been given a bounded spectral sequence, which we now know eventually stabilizes at each position. We would like to get some useful information out of such a spectral sequence.

Definition 161 (filtration). Let C_\bullet be a chain complex. A filtration F of C_\bullet is a chain of inclusions of subcomplexes $F_p C_\bullet$ of C_\bullet .

$$\cdots \subset F_{p-1} C_\bullet \subset F_p C_\bullet \subset F_{p+1} C_\bullet \subset \cdots \subset C_\bullet$$

Definition 162 (bounded convergence). Let E be a bounded spectral sequence starting at E^a in an abelian category \mathcal{A} , and let $\{H_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$ be a collection of objects in \mathcal{A} , each equipped with a finite filtration

$$0 = F_s H_n \subset \cdots \subset F_{p-1} H_n \subset F_p H_n \subset \cdots \subset F_t H_n = H_n.$$

We say that E converges to $\{H_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$ if there exist isomorphisms

$$E_{p,q}^\infty \cong F_p H_{p+q} / F_{p-1} H_{p+q}.$$

We express this convergence by writing

$$E_{p,q}^a \Rightarrow H_{p+q}.$$

Example 163. Consider the spectral sequence E starting at E^0 from [Example 157](#). This is certainly bounded, and stabilizes at each position (p, q) after the second page; that is, we have

$$E_{p,q}^\infty = E_{p,q}^2.$$

The exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow E_{p-1,q+1}^2 \hookrightarrow H_{p+q}(T) \twoheadrightarrow E_{p,q}^2 \longrightarrow 0$$

gives us, in a wholly unsatisfying and trivial way, a filtration

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} F_{-1} H_n & & F_0 H_n & & F_1 H_n \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ 0 & \hookrightarrow & E_{0,n}^2 & \hookrightarrow & H_n \end{array}$$

of H_n . The claim is that

$$E_{p,q}^0 \Rightarrow H_{p+q}.$$

In order to check this, we have to check that

$$E_{p,q}^2 \cong F_p H_{p+q} / F_{p-1} H_{p+q}$$

6. Spectral sequences

for all p, q . The only non-trivial cases are when $p = 0$ or 1 . When $p = 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} E_{0,n}^\infty &\stackrel{!}{\cong} F_0 H_n / F_{-1} H_n \\ &\cong E_{0,n}^2 / 0 \\ &\cong E_{0,n}^2, \end{aligned}$$

and when $p = 1$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} E_{1,n}^\infty &\stackrel{!}{\cong} F_1 H_{n+1} / F_0 H_{n+1} \\ &\cong H_{n+1} / E_{0,n+1}^2 \\ &\cong E_{1,n}^2 \end{aligned}$$

as required.

6.2.3. Exact couples

We now take a detour to the much simpler, more elegant world of exact couples.

Definition 164 (exact couple). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category. An exact couple in \mathcal{A} consists of objects and morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & E & \\ \gamma \nearrow & & \searrow \alpha \\ A & \xleftarrow{\beta} & E \end{array}$$

such that $\text{im } \alpha = \ker \beta$

6.2.4. The spectral sequence of a filtered complex

Theorem 165. A filtration F of a chain complex C_\bullet naturally determines a spectral sequence starting with

$$E_{p,q}^0 = F_p C_{p+q} / F_{p-1} C_{p+q}, \quad E_{p,q}^1 = H_{p+q}(E_{p,\bullet}^0)$$

Proof. We construct explicitly the spectral sequence above. Let C_\bullet be a chain complex, and F a filtration. We will use the following notation.

- We will denote by η_p the quotient

$$\eta_p: F_p C \twoheadrightarrow F_p C / F_{p-1} C.$$

coming from the short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow F_{p-1}C \hookrightarrow F_pC \twoheadrightarrow F_pC/F_{p-1}C \longrightarrow 0$$

- We will denote by A_p^r the subobject

$$A_p^r = \{c \in F_pC : dc \in F_{p-r}C\} \subset F_pC$$

of those elements whose differentials survive r many levels of the grading.

- We will denote by Z_p^r the image

$$Z_p^r = \eta_p(A_p^r).$$

- We will denote by B_p^r the image

$$B_p^r = \eta_p(d(a_{p+r-1}^{r-1})).$$

Examining the definitions, we see that we have the following inclusion.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} dA_{p+r-1}^{r-1} & \longequal{\quad} & \{dc \mid c \in F_{p+r-1}, dc \in F_pC\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ dA_{p+r}^r & \longequal{\quad} & \{dc \mid c \in F_{p+r}, dc \in F_pC\} \end{array}$$

Both of these are subobjects of F_pC ; by applying η_p and taking a sharp look at the definition of the B s, we find an inclusion

$$B_p^r \subset B_p^{r+1}.$$

Working inductively, we are left with the following sequence of inclusions.

$$0 = B_p^0 \subset B_p^1 \subset \cdots \subset B_p^r \subset \cdots$$

Defining $B_p^\infty = \bigcup_r B_p^r$, we can crown our sequence of inclusions as follows.

$$0 = B_p^0 \subset B_p^1 \subset \cdots \subset B_p^\infty.$$

6. Spectral sequences

Again examining definitions, we find the following inclusion.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_p^r & \xlongequal{\quad} & \{c \in F_p C \mid dc \in F_{p-r} C\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_p^{r+1} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \{c \in F_p C \mid dc \in F_{p-r-1} C\} \end{array}$$

As before, applying η_p and working inductively gives us a chain

$$\cdots \subset Z_p^r \subset \cdots \subset Z_p^1 \subset Z_p^0 = E_p^0$$

and defining $Z_p^\infty = \bigcap_r Z_p^r$ gives us

$$Z_p^\infty \subset \cdots \subset Z_p^1 \subset Z_p^0 = E_p^0,$$

But we should not rest on our laurels. Instead, note that for each r, r' , we have an inclusion

$$\begin{array}{ccc} dA_{p+r-1}^{r-1} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \{dc \mid c \in F_{p+r-1}, dc \in F_p C\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_p^{r'} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \{c \in F_p C \mid dc \in F_{p-r'} C\} \end{array}$$

since $d^2 = 0$. Thus, we can graft our chains of inclusions as follows.

$$0 = B_p^0 \subset B_p^1 \subset \cdots \subset B_p^\infty \subset Z_p^\infty \subset \cdots \subset Z_p^1 \subset Z_p^0 = E_p^0.$$

We defined

$$Z_p^r = \eta_p(A_p^r).$$

Recall that η_p was defined to be the canonical projection corresponding to a short exact sequence. Taking subobjects (where the left-hand square is a pullback), we find the following monomorphism of short exact sequences.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & F_{p-1}C \cap A_r^p & \hookrightarrow & A_r^p & \twoheadrightarrow & Z_r^p \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & F_{p-1}C & \hookrightarrow & F_p C & \twoheadrightarrow & F_p C / F_{p-1}C \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

Rewriting the definitions, we find that

$$F_{p-1}C \cap A_r^p = \{c \in F_{p-1}C \mid dc \in F_{p-r}C\} = A_{p-1}^{r-1},$$

so

$$Z_p^r \cong A_p^r / A_{p-1}^{r-1}.$$

We now define

$$E_p^r = \frac{Z_p^r}{B_p^r}.$$

We can write

$$\frac{Z_p^r}{B_p^r} \cong \frac{A_p^r + F_{p-1}C}{d(A_{p+r-1}^{r-1}) + F_{p-1}C} \cong \frac{A_p^r}{d(A_{p+r-1}^{r-1}) + A_{p-1}^{r-1}}.$$

I don't understand this step, and I don't have time to do the rest. \square

Theorem 166. Let C_\bullet be a chain complex, and F a bounded filtration on C_\bullet . Then the spectral sequence constructed in [Theorem 165](#) converges to the homology of the homology of C_\bullet ; that is

$$E_{p,q}^1 = H_{p+q}(F_p C_\bullet / F_{p-1} C_\bullet).$$

Example 167. Let E be the spectral sequence associated to a filtered complex C_\bullet , and suppose that

$$E_{p,q}^r = \begin{cases} A_p, & q = 0 \\ 0, & q \neq 0 \end{cases}.$$

6.3. The spectral sequence of a double complex

A special case of the spectral sequence of a filtered complex is the spectral sequence of a double complex. Given a double complex $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$, we define a new double complex

$$\left({}^I\tau_{\leq n} C \right)_{p,q} = \begin{cases} C_{p,q} & p \leq n \\ 0, & p > n \end{cases}.$$

That is, the $({}^I\tau_{\leq n} C)$ is the double complex obtained by setting all the entries to the right of the column $C_{p,\bullet}$ to zero.

This leads to a filtered complex

$$0 \subset \cdots \subset \text{Tot}({}^I\tau_{\leq 0} C)_{p,q} \subset \text{Tot}({}^I\tau_{\leq 1} C)_{p,q} \subset \cdots \subset \text{Tot}(C)_{p,q};$$

that is, with

$$F_p C = \text{Tot}({}^I\tau_{\leq p} C).$$

This gives rise to a spectral sequence via [Theorem 165](#).

6. Spectral sequences

Specifically, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 {}^I E_{p,q}^0 &= \frac{F_p C_{p+q}}{F_{p-1} C_{p+q}} \\
 &= \frac{\text{Tot}({}^I \tau_{\leq p} C)_{p+q}}{\text{Tot}({}^I \tau_{\leq p-1} C)_{p+q}} \\
 &= \frac{\bigoplus_{i+j=p+q} C_{i,j}}{\bigoplus_{\substack{i+j=p+q \\ i \leq p-1}} C_{i,j}} \\
 &= \frac{C_{0,p+q} \oplus \cdots \oplus C_{p,q}}{C_{0,p+q} \oplus \cdots \oplus C_{p-1,q+1}} \\
 &= C_{p,q}.
 \end{aligned}$$

The differentials $C_{p,q} \rightarrow C_{p,q-1}$ are simply the vertical differentials $d_{p,q}^v$.

Of course, we can also transpose our double complex before performing the above procedure; this gives a different spectral sequence ${}^{II} E_{p,q}^0$.

By [Theorem 165](#), both of these converge to the homology of the total complex $H_{p+q}(\text{Tot}(C))$.

Definition 168 (spectral sequences associated to a double complex).

- The vertically filtered spectral sequence associated to a double complex is the spectral sequence ${}^I E_{p,q}^0 \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(\text{Tot}(C))$.
- The horizontally filtered spectral sequence associated to a double complex is the spectral sequence ${}^{II} E_{p,q}^0 \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(\text{Tot}(C))$.

Example 169 (balancing Tor again). Let M and N be right and left R -modules respectively, and let $P_\bullet \xrightarrow{\cong} M$ and $Q_\bullet \xrightarrow{\cong} N$ be projective resolutions. We can form the double complex

$$M_{p,q} = P_p \otimes_R Q_q.$$

The totalization of this complex is then simply what we have been calling $P_\bullet \otimes_R Q_\bullet$.

6.3. The spectral sequence of a double complex

Let us work out explicitly the vertical filtration. The zeroth page is as follows.

The diagram shows a 3x3 grid of commutative diagrams. The vertical axis is labeled q and the horizontal axis is labeled p . Each cell contains a sequence of three objects connected by downward arrows. The objects are tensor products of P_i , Q_j , and Q_k . The arrows are labeled $\text{id} \otimes d^Q$.

\vdots	\vdots	\vdots
$P_0 \otimes_R Q_2$	$P_1 \otimes_R Q_2$	$P_2 \otimes_R Q_2$
$\text{id} \otimes d^Q \downarrow$	$\text{id} \otimes d^Q \downarrow$	$\text{id} \otimes d^Q \downarrow$
$P_0 \otimes_R Q_1$	$P_1 \otimes_R Q_1$	$P_2 \otimes_R Q_1$
$\text{id} \otimes d^Q \downarrow$	$\text{id} \otimes d^Q \downarrow$	$\text{id} \otimes d^Q \downarrow$
$P_0 \otimes_R Q_0$	$P_1 \otimes_R Q_0$	$P_2 \otimes_R Q_0$

Since each P_i is projective, taking homology ignores it, and we get that

$$\begin{aligned} H_q(P_p \otimes_R Q_\bullet) &= P_p \otimes_R H_q(Q_\bullet) \\ &= \begin{cases} P_p \otimes_R N, & q = 0 \\ 0, & q \neq 0 \end{cases}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the first page of our spectral sequence consists of a single line at the first page.

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\
 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\
 & P_0 \otimes_R N & \longleftarrow & P_1 \otimes_R N & \longleftarrow & P_2 \otimes_R N & \longleftarrow & \dots
 \end{array}$$

We now have

$$\begin{aligned} {}^I E_{p,q}^2 &= H_p(P_\bullet \otimes_R N) \\ &= \mathrm{Tor}_p(M, N). \end{aligned}$$

6. Spectral sequences

At this point the spectral sequence collapses, telling us that

$$H_p(P_\bullet \otimes_R Q_\bullet) = H_p(P_\bullet \otimes_R N) = \operatorname{Tor}_p(M, N).$$

The other filtration gives

$$H_p(P_\bullet \otimes_R Q_\bullet) = H_p(M \otimes_R Q_\bullet).$$

Thus,

$$H_p(M \otimes_R Q_\bullet) = \operatorname{Tor}_p(M, N),$$

which says that Tor is balanced.

6.4. Hyper-derived functors

Consider abelian categories and right exact functors as follows.

$$\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{G} \mathcal{E}$$

One might wonder about the relationship between LF , LG , and $L(G \circ F)$.

The problem is that we don't know how to make sense of the composition $LG \circ LF$, since LF lands in $\mathbf{Ch}^{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ rather than \mathcal{A} ; derived functors go from an abelian category to a category of chain complexes.

6.4.1. Cartan-Eilenberg resolutions

Definition 170 (Cartan-Eilenberg resolution). Let \mathcal{A} be an abelian category with enough projectives, and let $A \in \mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A})$. A Cartan-Eilenberg resolution of A is an upper-half-plane double complex $(P_{\bullet, \bullet}, d^h, d^v)$, equipped with an augmentation map

$$\epsilon: P_{\bullet, 0} \rightarrow A_\bullet$$

such that the following criteria are satisfied.

1. $B(P_{p, \bullet}, d^h) \xrightarrow{\sim} B(A_p, d^A)$ is a projective resolution.
2. $H(P_{p, \bullet}, d^h) \xrightarrow{\sim} H(A_p, d^A)$ is a projective resolution.
3. $A_p \cong 0 \implies P_{p, \bullet} = 0$.

Here, $B(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)$ are the horizontal boundaries of the chain complex $(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)$, and

$$H(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \cong \frac{Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)}{B(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)}$$

is defined similarly.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \longleftarrow & P_{-r,1} & \longleftarrow & \cdots & \longleftarrow & P_{0,1} & \longleftarrow & P_{1,1} & \longleftarrow & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
0 & \longleftarrow & P_{-r,0} & \longleftarrow & \cdots & \longleftarrow & P_{0,0} & \longleftarrow & P_{1,0} & \longleftarrow & \cdots \\
\vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
0 & \longleftarrow & A_{-r} & \longleftarrow & \cdots & \longleftarrow & A_0 & \longleftarrow & A_1 & \longleftarrow & \cdots
\end{array}$$

Proposition 171. The following are also projective resolutions.

1. $Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \xrightarrow{\cong} Z(A_p, d^A)$
2. $P_{p,\bullet} \xrightarrow{\cong} A_p$

Proof.

1. We have essentially by definition the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow B(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \hookrightarrow Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \twoheadrightarrow H(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \longrightarrow 0$$

The outer terms are projective because they are the terms of projective resolutions, so $Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)$ is also projective. Thus, $Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)$ is at the very least a complex of projectives.

Further, we have the first few rows of the long exact sequence on homology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \cdots & \longrightarrow & Z(P_{p,1}, d^h) & \longrightarrow & 0 & & \\
 & & \searrow \delta & & \nearrow & & \\
 & 0 & \longrightarrow & Z(P_{p,0}, d^h) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \\
 & & \searrow \delta & & \nearrow & & \\
 & B(A_p, d^A) & \longrightarrow & Z(A_p, d^A) & \longrightarrow & H(A_p, d^A) & \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

6. Spectral sequences

This tells us that the homology of $Z(P_{p,\bullet})$ is

$$H_q(Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)) = \begin{cases} Z(A_p, d^A), & q = 0 \\ 0, & q > 0 \end{cases},$$

i.e. that $Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h)$ is a projective resolution of $Z(A_p, d^A)$.

2. Exactly the same, but with the short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow Z(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \hookrightarrow H(P_{p,\bullet}, d^h) \twoheadrightarrow B(P_{p-1,\bullet}, d^h) \longrightarrow 0$$

□

Proposition 172. Every chain complex A_\bullet has a Cartan-Eilenberg resolution $P_{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{\cong} A_\bullet$.

Proof. We construct a Cartan-Eilenberg resolution $P_{\bullet,\bullet}$ explicitly. Pick projective resolutions

$$P_{p,\bullet}^B \rightarrow B(A_p, d^h), \quad B_{p,\bullet}^H \xrightarrow{\cong} H(A_p, d^h).$$

By the horseshoe lemma, we can find a projective resolution $P_{p,\bullet}^Z \xrightarrow{\cong} Z(A_p, d^h)$ fitting into the following exact sequence.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^B & \hookrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^Z & \twoheadrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^H \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & B(A_p, d^h) & \hookrightarrow & Z(A_p, d^h) & \twoheadrightarrow & H(A_p, d^h) \longrightarrow 0 \end{array} \quad (6.3)$$

Playing the same game again, we find a projective resolution of A_p .

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^Z & \hookrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^A & \twoheadrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet}^B \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & Z(A_p, d^h) & \hookrightarrow & A_p & \twoheadrightarrow & B(A_{p-1}, d^h) \longrightarrow 0 \end{array} \quad (6.4)$$

We then define our Cartan-Eilenberg resolution to be the double complex whose p th column is $(P_{p,\bullet}^A, (-1)^p d^{P^A})$, and whose horizontal differentials are given by the composition

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} P_{p,\bullet}^A & \longrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet}^B & \longrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet}^Z & \longrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet}^A \\ \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong \\ A_p & \xrightarrow{d^A} & B_{p-1} & \hookrightarrow & Z_{p-1} & \hookrightarrow & A_{p-1} \end{array} \quad (6.5)$$

In this case, all the criteria are satisfied by definition.

□

Proposition 173. Let A_\bullet and A'_\bullet be bounded-below chain complexes, and let $P_{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{\cong} A_\bullet$ and $P'_{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{\cong} A'_\bullet$ be Cartan-Eilenberg resolutions. Then any morphism of chain complexes $f: A_\bullet \rightarrow A'_\bullet$ can be lifted to a morphism $\tilde{f}: P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A \rightarrow P_{\bullet,\bullet}^B$ of double complex. Furthermore, this lift is unique up to a *homotopy of double complexes*, i.e. for any other lift $\tilde{\tilde{f}}$, there exist maps

$$s_{p,q}^h: P_{p,q} \rightarrow P'_{p+1,q}, \quad s_{p,q}^v: P_{p,q} \rightarrow E_{p,q+1}$$

such that

Proof. We have the following lifts.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & Q_{p,\bullet}^B & & Q_{p,\bullet}^Z & & Q_{p,\bullet}^H \\
 & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \nearrow \\
 P_{p,\bullet}^B & & & & P_{p,\bullet}^Z & & P_{p,\bullet}^H \\
 \downarrow & \nearrow & & & \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \\
 0 \longrightarrow B_p(B) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(B) & \longrightarrow & H_p(B) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 \downarrow & \nearrow & & & \downarrow & \nearrow & \\
 0 \longrightarrow B_p(A) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(A) & \longrightarrow & H_p(A) & \longrightarrow & 0
 \end{array}$$

The horseshoe lemma for morphisms (*mutatis mutandis*) allows us to complete this diagram in a compatible way as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & Q_{p,\bullet}^B & \longrightarrow & Q_{p,\bullet}^Z & \longrightarrow & Q_{p,\bullet}^H \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \nearrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^B & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^Z & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^H \longrightarrow 0 \\
 \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & B_p(B) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(B) & \longrightarrow & H_p(B) \longrightarrow 0 \\
 \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & B_p(A) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(A) & \longrightarrow & H_p(A) \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

6. Spectral sequences

Using the lifts we constructed above and identical logic, we get the following.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & Q_{p,\bullet}^Z & \longrightarrow & Q_{p,\bullet} & \longrightarrow & Q_{p-1,\bullet}^B & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 & & \nearrow & & \downarrow & & \nearrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet}^Z & \longrightarrow & P_{p,\bullet} & \longrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet}^B & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & Z_p(B) & \longrightarrow & B_p(A) & \longrightarrow & B_{p-1}(A) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & Z_p(A) & \longrightarrow & A_p & \longrightarrow & B_{p-1}(A) & \longrightarrow & 0
 \end{array}$$

Thus we have, for each $p \in \mathbb{Z}$, a morphism of complexes $P_{p,\bullet} \rightarrow Q_{p,\bullet}$. It remains only to show that each of the squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 P_{p,\bullet} & \longrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 Q_{p,\bullet} & \longrightarrow & Q_{p-1,\bullet}
 \end{array}$$

commutes. But we get these squares by pasting together squares stolen from the above diagrams as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 P_{p,\bullet} & \xrightarrow{d^h} & P_{p-1,\bullet}^Z & \hookrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet}^B & \hookrightarrow & P_{p-1,\bullet} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 Q_{p,\bullet} & \xrightarrow{d^h} & Q_{p-1,\bullet}^Z & \hookrightarrow & Q_{p-1,\bullet}^B & \hookrightarrow & Q_{p-1,\bullet}
 \end{array}$$

□

Proposition 174. Let f, g be chain homotopic maps via the homotopy f .

Proposition 175. Let $P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A$ be a Cartan-Eilenberg resolution of A_\bullet . Then the canonical map

$$\text{Tot}(P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A) \rightarrow A$$

is a quasi-isomorphism

Proof. Spectral sequence with vertical filtration. □

6.4.2. Hyper-derived functors

Definition 176 (left hyper-derived functor). Let $F: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a right exact functor, and assume \mathcal{A} has enough projectives. The left hyper-derived functor $\mathbb{L}_i F$ of F is the

functor

$$\mathbb{L}_i F: \mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}; \quad \mathbb{L}_i F(A_\bullet) = H_i(\mathrm{Tot}(F(P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A))),$$

where $P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A$ is a Cartan-Eilenberg resolution of A_\bullet .

Hyper-derived functors are functorial by

Proposition 177. Let A_\bullet be a bounded below chain complex in an abelian category \mathcal{A} . There are two spectral sequences

$${}^I E_{p,q}^2 = H_p(L_q F(A_\bullet)) \implies \mathbb{L}_{p+q}(A_\bullet),$$

$${}^{II} E_{p,q}^2 = L_p F(H_q(A_\bullet)) \implies \mathbb{L}_{p+q}(A_\bullet).$$

Proof. We use the spectral sequence for the double complex $F(P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A)$. The horizontal filtration has no surprises. Using the vertical filtration, one must use that

$$H_p(F(P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A)) = F(H_p(P_{\bullet,\bullet}^A)),$$

which is true because the horizontal cycles and boundaries are □

This allows us to define the famous *Grothendieck spectral sequence*, which allows us to compute the composition of two derived functors.

Proposition 178. Let \mathcal{A} , \mathcal{B} , and \mathcal{C} be abelian categories, and assume that \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{B} have enough projectives. Let F and G as below be right exact, and assume that G sends projective objects to F -acyclic objects.¹ Then for all $A \in \mathcal{A}$, there exists a convergent spectral sequence

$$E_{p,q}^2 = L_p F(L_q G(A)) \implies L_{p+q}(F \circ G)(A).$$

Proof. Let $P_\bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} A$ be a projective resolution. From [Proposition 177](#), we find two spectral sequences. Applying the first to $G(P_\bullet)$, we find

$$H_p(L_q(F(G(P_\bullet)))) \implies \mathbb{L}_{p+q}.$$

However, by assumption $G(P_\bullet)$ is a chain complex of F -acyclic objects, so

$$L_q F(G(P_\bullet)) = \begin{cases} F(G(P_\bullet)), & q = 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

¹An object $B \in \mathcal{B}$ is called *F-acyclic* if for all $q > 0$, $L_q F(B) = 0$. For example, projective objects are F -acyclic for all F .

6. Spectral sequences

Taking p th homology thus gives us, with $q = 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} H_p(L_0 F(G(P_\bullet))) &= H_p(F \circ G(P_\bullet)) \\ &= L_p(F \circ G)(A). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the spectral sequence collapses at the second page, and we have

$$\mathbb{L}_p F(G(P_\bullet)) \cong L_p(F \circ G)(A)$$

The second spectral sequence guarantees us that

$$L_p F(H_q(G(P_\bullet))) \implies \mathbb{L}_{p+q}(G(P_\bullet)).$$

However, by definition

$$H_q(G(P_\bullet)) = L_q G(A),$$

giving us a spectral sequence

$$E_{p,q}^2 = (L_p F \circ L_q G)(A) \implies L_{p+q}(F \circ G)(A)$$

as required. \square

Example 179 (Lyndon-Hochschild-Serre spectral sequence). Let G be a group, and N a normal subgroup. This gives us the following commuting² diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{Z}G\text{-Mod} & \xrightarrow{(-)_N} & \mathbb{Z}G/N\text{-Mod} \\ & \searrow (-)_G & \swarrow (-)_{G/N} \\ & \text{Ab} & \end{array}$$

If we can show that $(-)_N$ takes projectives to $(-)_N$ -acyclics, then we are entitled to apply [Proposition 178](#). Note that $(-)_N$ takes free $\mathbb{Z}G$ -modules to free $\mathbb{Z}G/N$ modules, simply by cutting away the basis elements on which N acts trivially. Since any projective is a direct summand of some free module and $(-)_N$ is additive, it thus takes projectives to projectives.

[Proposition 178](#) now tells us that there exists a convergent spectral sequence

$$E_{p,q}^2 = (L_p(-)_{G/N} \circ L_q(-)_N)(A) \implies L_{p+q}(-)_G(A).$$

That is, a spectral sequence

$$E_{p,q}^2 = H_p(G/N, H_q(N, A)) \implies H_{p+q}(G, A).$$

²On the nose!

This is known as the *Lyndon-Hochschild-Serre spectral sequence*.

7. Triangulated categories

Definition 180 (triangulated category). A triangulated category consists of the following data.

1. An additive category \mathcal{T} .
2. An equivalence

$$\mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}; \quad X \mapsto X[1],$$

called the translation functor.

3. A collection of distinguished triangles

$$\left\{ X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[-1] \right\}.$$

These must satisfy the following four axioms.

- (TR1) a) Every morphism f can be extended to a distinguished triangle as above.
b) The collection of distinguished triangles is closed under isomorphism.
c) Given $X \in \mathcal{T}$, the diagram

$$X \xrightarrow{\text{id}} X \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow X[1]$$

is also distinguished.

- (TR2) A diagram

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1]$$

if and only if the ‘rotated’ diagram

$$Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1] \xrightarrow{-f[1]} Y[1]$$

is distinguished.

7. Triangulated categories

(TR3) Given a solid commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \longrightarrow & Y & \longrightarrow & Z & \longrightarrow & X[1] \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow f[1] \\ X & \longrightarrow & Y & \longrightarrow & Z & \longrightarrow & X[1] \end{array}$$

with distinguished rows, there exists a dashed morphism making everything commute.

(TR4) Suppose we are given the following distinguished triangles.

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{u} Y/X \xrightarrow{d} X[1]$$

$$Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{v} Z/Y \xrightarrow{d'} Y[1]$$

$$X \xrightarrow{g \circ f} Z \xrightarrow{w} Z/X \xrightarrow{d''} X[1]$$

Then there is a distinguished triangle

$$Y/X \xrightarrow{\phi} Z/X \xrightarrow{\psi} Z/Y \xrightarrow{\theta} Y/X[1]$$

making the following diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & g \circ f & & & & \\ & \searrow & & \nearrow & & & \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z & & \\ & \searrow u & & \nearrow v & & & \\ & Y/X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & Z/X & \xrightarrow{d''} & X[1] & \\ & & \searrow \psi & & \searrow f[1] & & \\ & & Z/Y & \xrightarrow{d'} & Y[1] & \xrightarrow{u[1]} & Y/X[1] \\ & & & \searrow \theta & & & \end{array}$$

Part II.

Algebraic topology

8. Homology

8.1. Basic definitions and examples

We assume a basic knowledge of simplicial sets just to get the ball rolling.

Definition 181 (singular complex, singular homology). Let X be a topological space. The singular chain complex $C_\bullet(X)$ is defined level-wise by

$$C_n(X) = M(\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{Sing}(X)))$$

where \mathcal{F} denotes the free group functor and M is the Moore functor ([Definition 133](#)). That is, it has differentials

$$d_n: C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}; \quad (\alpha: \Delta^n \rightarrow X) \mapsto \sum_{i=0}^n \partial^i \alpha.$$

The singular homology of X is the homology

$$H_n(X) = H_n(C_\bullet(X)).$$

Note that the singular chain complex construction is functorial: any map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ gives a chain map $C(f): C(X) \rightarrow C(Y)$. This immediately implies that the n th homology of a space X is invariant under homeomorphism.

Example 182. Denote by pt the one-point topological space. Then $C(\text{pt})_\bullet$ is given level-wise as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccc} \cdots & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{0} & \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{0} & \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\ & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \\ \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_4} & C_3 & \xrightarrow{d_3} & C_2 & \xrightarrow{d_2} & C_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1} & C_0 & \xrightarrow{d_0} & C_{-1} & \xrightarrow{d_{-1}} & \cdots \end{array}$$

Thus, the n th homology of the point is

$$H_n(\text{pt}) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & n = 0 \\ 0, & n \neq 0 \end{cases}.$$

8. Homology

Example 183. Let X be a path-connected topological space. Then $H_0(X) = \mathbb{Z}$. To see this, consider a general element of $H_0(X)$. Because d_0 is the zero map, $H_n(X)$ is simply the free group generated by the collection of points of X modulo the relation “there is a path from x to y .” However, path-connectedness implies that every two points of X are connected by a path, so every point of X is equivalent to any other. Thus, $H_0(X)$ has only one generator.

More generally,

$$H_n(X) = \mathbb{Z}^{\pi_0(X)}.$$

8.2. The Hurewicz homomorphism

Theorem 184 (Hurewicz). For any path-connected topological space X , there is an isomorphism

$$h_X: H_1(X) \cong \pi_1(X)_{\text{ab}},$$

where $(-)_{\text{ab}}$ denotes the abelianization. Furthermore, the maps h_X form the components of a natural isomorphism between the functors

$$h: H_1 \Rightarrow (\pi_1)_{\text{ab}}.$$

Example 185. We can now confidently say that

$$H_1(\mathbb{S}^1) = \pi_1(\mathbb{S}^1)_{\text{ab}} = \mathbb{Z},$$

and that

$$H_1(\mathbb{S}^n) = 0, \quad n > 1.$$

Example 186. Since

$$\pi_1(X \times Y) \cong \pi_1(X) \times \pi_1(Y)$$

and

$$\pi_1(X \vee Y) \cong \pi_1(X) * \pi_1(Y),$$

we have that

$$H_1(X \times Y) \cong H_1(X) \times H_1(Y) \cong H_1(X \vee Y).$$

8.3. Homotopy equivalence

Proposition 187. Let $f, g: X \rightarrow Y$ be continuous maps between topological spaces, and let $H: X \times [0, 1] \rightarrow Y$ be a homotopy between them. Then H induces a homotopy between $C(f)$ and $C(g)$. In particular, f and g agree on homology.

Corollary 188. Any two topological spaces which are homotopy equivalent have the same homology groups.

Example 189. Any contractible space is homotopy equivalent to the one point space pt. Thus, for any contractible space X we have

$$H_n(X) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & n = 0 \\ 0, & n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

8.4. Relative homology; the long exact sequence of a pair of spaces

Definition 190 (relative homology). Let X be a topological space, and let $X \subset A$. The relative chain complex of (X, A) is

$$S_\bullet(X, A) = S_\bullet(X)/S_\bullet(A).$$

The relative homology of (X, A) is

$$H_n(X, A) = H_n(S_\bullet(X, A)).$$

Denote by **Pair** the category whose objects are pairs (X, A) , where X is a topological space and $A \hookrightarrow X$ is a subspace, and whose morphisms $(X, A) \rightarrow (Y, B)$ are maps $f: X \rightarrow Y$ such that $f(A) \subset B$.

Lemma 191. For each n , relative homology provides a functor $H_n: \mathbf{Pair} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}$.

Proof. Consider the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S(X)_\bullet & \xrightarrow{f} & S(Y)_\bullet \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ S(X)_\bullet/S(A)_\bullet & \dashrightarrow & S(Y)_\bullet/S(B)_\bullet \end{array}$$

The dashed arrow is well-defined because of the assumption that $f(A) \subset B$. Functoriality now follows from the functoriality of H_n . \square

Proposition 192. Let (X, A) be a pair of spaces. There is the following long exact se-

8. Homology

quence.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{j+1}(X, A) & & \\
 & \swarrow & & & \searrow & \delta & \\
 & & H_j(A) & \longrightarrow & H_j(X) & \longrightarrow & H_j(X, A) \\
 & \swarrow & & & \searrow & \delta & \\
 & & H_{j-1}(A) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & &
 \end{array}$$

Proof. This is the long exact sequence associated to the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow C_\bullet(A) \hookrightarrow C_\bullet(X) \twoheadrightarrow C_\bullet(X, A) \longrightarrow 0$$

□

Example 193. Let $X = \mathbb{D}^n$, the n -disk, and $A = \mathbb{S}^{n-1}$ its boundary n -sphere.

Consider the long exact sequence on the pair $(\mathbb{D}^n, \mathbb{S}^{n-1})$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{j+1}(\mathbb{D}^n, \mathbb{S}^{n-1}) & & \\
 & \swarrow & & & \searrow & \delta & \\
 & & H_j(\mathbb{S}^{n-1}) & \longrightarrow & H_j(\mathbb{D}^n) & \longrightarrow & H_j(\mathbb{D}^n, \mathbb{S}^{n-1}) \\
 & \swarrow & & & \searrow & \delta & \\
 & & H_{j-1}(\mathbb{S}^{n-1}) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & &
 \end{array}$$

We know that $H_j(\mathbb{D}^n) = 0$ for $n > 0$ because it is contractible.

Thus, exactness forces

$$H_j(\mathbb{D}^n, \mathbb{S}^{n-1}) \cong H_{j-1}(\mathbb{S}^{n-1})$$

for $j > 1$ and $n \geq 1$.

8.5. Barycentric subdivision

Fact 194. Let X be a topological space, and let $\mathcal{U} = \{U_i \mid i \in I\}$ be an open cover of X . Denote by

$$S_n^{\mathcal{U}}(X)$$

the free group generated by those continuous functions

$$\alpha: \Delta^n \rightarrow X$$

whose images are completely contained in some open set in the open cover \mathcal{U} . That is, such that there exists some i such that $\alpha(\Delta^n) \subset U_i$. The inclusion $S_n^{\mathcal{U}}(X) \hookrightarrow S_n(X)$

induces a cochain structure on $S_\bullet^{\mathfrak{U}}(X)$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots & \longrightarrow & S_2^{\mathfrak{U}}(X) & \longrightarrow & S_1^{\mathfrak{U}}(X) & \longrightarrow & S_0^{\mathfrak{U}}(X) \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \cdots & \longrightarrow & S_2(X) & \longrightarrow & S_1(X) & \longrightarrow & S_0(X) \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

In fact, this inclusion is homotopic to the identity, hence induces an isomorphism

$$H_n^{\mathfrak{U}}(X) := H_n(S^{\mathfrak{U}}(X)_\bullet) \cong H_n(X).$$

This fact allows us almost immediately to read off two important theorems.

8.5.1. Excision

Theorem 195 (excision). Let $W \subset A \subset X$ be a triple of topological spaces such that $\bar{W} \subset \mathring{A}$. Then the right-facing inclusions

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \setminus W & \xhookrightarrow{i} & A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X \setminus W & \xhookrightarrow{i} & X \end{array}$$

induce an isomorphism

$$H_n(i): H_n(X \setminus W, A \setminus W) \cong H_n(X, A).$$

That is, when considering relative homology $H_n(X, A)$, we may cut away a subspace from the interior of A without harming anything. This gives us a hint as to the interpretation of relative homology: $H_n(X, A)$ can be interpreted the part of $H_n(X)$ which does not come from A .

8.5.2. The Mayer-Vietoris sequence

Theorem 196 (Mayer-Vietoris). Let X be a topological space, and let $\mathcal{U} = \{X_1, X_2\}$ be an open cover of X , i.e. let $X = X_1 \cup X_2$. Then we have the following long exact sequence.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{n+1}(X) \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & & & \uparrow \delta \\
 & H_n(X_1 \cap X_2) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X_1) \oplus H_n(X_2) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X) & \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & & & \uparrow \delta \\
 & H_{n-1}(X_1 \cap X_2) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & & &
 \end{array}$$

Proof. We can draw our inclusions as the following pushout.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & X_1 & & \\
 & \nearrow i_1 & & \searrow \kappa_1 & \\
 X_1 \cap X_2 & & & & X \\
 & \searrow i_2 & & \nearrow \kappa_2 & \\
 & & X_2 & &
 \end{array}$$

We have, almost by definition, the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \longrightarrow S_\bullet(X_1 \cap X_2) \xrightarrow{(i_1, i_2)} S_\bullet(X_1) \oplus S_\bullet(X_2) \xrightarrow{\kappa_1 - \kappa_2} S_\bullet^{\mathcal{U}}(X) \longrightarrow 0$$

This gives the following long exact sequence on homology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{n+1}^{\mathcal{U}}(X) \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & & & \uparrow \delta \\
 & H_n(X_1 \cap X_2) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X_1) \oplus H_n(X_2) & \longrightarrow & H_n^{\mathcal{U}}(X) & \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & & & \uparrow \delta \\
 & H_{n-1}(X_1 \cap X_2) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & & &
 \end{array}$$

We have seen that $H^{\mathcal{U}}(n)(X) \cong H_n(X)$; the result follows. \square

Example 197 (Homology groups of spheres). We can decompose \mathbb{S}^n as

$$\mathbb{S}^n = (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N) \cup (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus S),$$

where N and S are the North and South pole respectively. This gives us the following

pushout.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathbb{S}^n \setminus N & & \\
 & \nearrow & & \searrow & \\
 (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N) \cap (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus S) & & & & \mathbb{S}^n \\
 & \searrow & & \nearrow & \\
 & & \mathbb{S}^n \setminus S & &
 \end{array}$$

The Mayer-Vietoris sequence is as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{j+1}(\mathbb{S}^n) \\
 & & & & \searrow & \delta & \nearrow \\
 & & H_j((\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N) \cap (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus S)) & \longrightarrow & H_j(\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N) \oplus H_j(\mathbb{S}^n \setminus S) & \longrightarrow & H_j^{\text{all}}(X) \\
 & & \searrow & \delta & \nearrow \\
 & & H_{j-1}((\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N) \cap (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus S)) & \longrightarrow & \cdots
 \end{array}$$

We know that

$$\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N \cong \mathbb{S}^n \setminus S \cong \mathbb{D}^n \simeq \text{pt}$$

and that

$$(\mathbb{S}^n \setminus N) \cap (\mathbb{S}^n \setminus S) \cong I \times \mathbb{S}^{n-1} \simeq \mathbb{S}^{n-1},$$

so using the fact that homology respects homotopy, the above exact sequence reduces (for $j > 1$) to

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{j+1}(\mathbb{S}^n) & & \\
 & & \searrow & \delta & \nearrow & & \\
 & & H_j(\mathbb{S}^{n-1}) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & H_j(\mathbb{S}^n) \\
 & & \searrow & \delta & \nearrow & & \\
 & & H_{j-1}(\mathbb{S}^{n-1}) & \longrightarrow & \cdots
 \end{array}$$

Thus, for $i > 1$, we have

$$H_i(\mathbb{S}^j) \cong H_{i-1}(\mathbb{S}^{j-1}).$$

We have already noted the following facts.

- H_0 counts the number of connected components, so

$$H_0(\mathbb{S}^j) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}, & j = 0 \\ \mathbb{Z}, & j > 0 \end{cases}$$

8. Homology

- For path connected X , $H_1(X) \cong \pi_1(X)_{\text{ab}}$, so

$$H_1(\mathbb{S}^j) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & j = 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- For $i > 0$, $H_i(\text{pt}) = 0$, so $H_i(\mathbb{S}^0) = 0$.

This gives us the following table.

$j = 3$	\mathbb{Z}	0		
$j = 2$	\mathbb{Z}	0		
$j = 1$	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}		
$j = 0$	$\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}$	0	0	0
$H_i(\mathbb{S}^j)$	$i = 0$	$i = 1$	$i = 2$	$i = 3$

The relation

$$H_i(\mathbb{S}^j) \cong H_{i-1}(\mathbb{S}^{j-1}), \quad i > 1$$

allows us to fill in the above table as follows.

$j = 3$	\mathbb{Z}	0	0	\mathbb{Z}
$j = 2$	\mathbb{Z}	0	\mathbb{Z}	0
$j = 1$	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}	0	0
$j = 0$	$\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}$	0	0	0
$H_i(\mathbb{S}^j)$	$i = 0$	$i = 1$	$i = 2$	$i = 3$

(8.1)

Example 198. Above, we used the Hurewicz homomorphism to see that

$$H_1(\mathbb{S}^j) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & j = 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

We can also see this directly from the Mayer-Vietoris sequence. Recall that we expressed \mathbb{S}^n as the following pushout, with $X^+ \cong X^- \simeq \mathbb{D}^n$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X^+ & \\ \nearrow & & \searrow \\ X^+ \cap X^- & & \mathbb{S}^n \\ \searrow & & \nearrow \\ & X^- & \end{array}$$

Also recall that with this setup, we had $X^+ \cap X^- \simeq \mathbb{S}^{n-1}$.

First, fix $n > 1$, and consider the following part of the Mayer-Vietoris sequence.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & H_1(\mathbb{S}^n) & & \\ & & & & \searrow \delta & \nearrow & \\ & H_0(X^+ \cap X^-) & \xrightarrow{H_0(i_0, i_1)} & H_0(X^+) \oplus H_0(X^-) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \end{array}$$

If we can verify that the morphism $H_0(i_0, i_1)$ is injective, then we are done, because exactness will force $H_1(\mathbb{S}^n) \cong 0$.

The elements of $H_0(X^+ \cap X^-)$ are equivalence classes of points of X^+ and X^- , with one equivalence class per connected component. Let $p \in X^+ \cap X^-$. Then $i_0(p)$ is a point of X^+ , and $i_1(p)$ is a point of X^- . Each of these is a generator for the corresponding zeroth homology, so (i_0, i_1) sends the generator $[p]$ to the pair $([i_0(p)], [i_1(p)])$. This is clearly injective.

Now let $n = 1$, and consider the following portion of the Mayer-Vietoris sequence.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \dots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & H_1(\mathbb{S}^1) \\ & & & \searrow \delta & \\ & & & & H_0(X^+ \cap X^-) \xrightarrow{H_0(i_0, i_1)} H_0(X^+) \oplus H_0(X^-) \xrightarrow{H_0(\kappa_1) - H_0(\kappa_2)} H_0(\mathbb{S}^1) \end{array}$$

We can immediately replace things we know, finding the following.

$$(a, b) \longmapsto (a + b, a + b)$$

$$0 \longrightarrow H_1(\mathbb{S}^1) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{f} \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}$$

$$(c, d) \mapsto c - d$$

The kernel of f is the free group generated by (a, a) . Thus, $H_1(\mathbb{S}^1) \cong \mathbb{Z}$.

8.5.3. The relative Mayer-Vietoris sequence

Theorem 199 (relative Mayer-Vietoris sequence). Let X be a topological space, and let $A, B \subset X$ open in $A \cup B$. Denote $\mathfrak{U} = \{A, B\}$.

8. Homology

Then there is a long exact sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & H_{n+1}(X, A \cup B) \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & \delta & & \swarrow \\
 & H_n(X, A \cap B) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X, A) \oplus H_n(X, B) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X, A \cup B) & \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & \delta & & \swarrow \\
 & H_{n-1}(X, A \cap B) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & & &
 \end{array}$$

Proof. Consider the following chain complex of chain complexes.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & 0 & & 0 & & 0 & \\
 & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & S_n(A \cap B) & \longrightarrow & S_n(A) \oplus S_n(B) & \longrightarrow & S_n^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B) \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & S_n(X) & \longrightarrow & S_n(X) \oplus S_n(X) & \longrightarrow & S_n(X) \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & S_n(X, A \cap B) & \longrightarrow & S_n(X, A) \oplus S_n(X, B) & \longrightarrow & S_n(X)/S_n^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B) \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & 0 & & 0 & & 0
 \end{array}$$

All columns are trivially short exact sequences, as are the first two rows. Thus, the nine lemma ([Theorem 56](#)) implies that the last row is also exact.

Consider the following map of chain complexes; the first row is the last column of the above grid.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & S_n^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B) & \hookrightarrow & S_n(X) & \twoheadrightarrow & S_n(X)/S_n^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B) \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \phi \downarrow & & \parallel & & \downarrow \psi \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & S_n(A \cup B) & \longrightarrow & S_n(X) & \twoheadrightarrow & S_n(X, A \cup B) \longrightarrow 0
 \end{array}$$

This gives us, by [Lemma 53](#), a morphism of long exact sequences on homology.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 H_n(S_{\bullet}^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B)) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X) & \longrightarrow & H_n(S_{\bullet}(X)/S_{\bullet}^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B)) & \longrightarrow & H_{n-1}(S_{\bullet}^{\mathcal{U}}(A \cup B)) \longrightarrow H_{n-1}(X) \\
 H_n(\phi) \downarrow & & \parallel & & \downarrow H_n(\psi) & & \downarrow H_{n-1}(\phi) & \parallel \\
 H_n(A \cup B) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X) & \longrightarrow & H_n(X, A \cup B) & \longrightarrow & H_{n-1}(A \cup B) & \longrightarrow H_{n-1}(X)
 \end{array}$$

We have seen (in [Fact 194](#)) that $H_i(\phi)$ is an isomorphism for all i . Thus, the five lemma ([Theorem 55](#)) tells us that $H_n(\psi)$ is an isomorphism. \square

8.6. Reduced homology

It would be hard to argue that Table 8.1 is not pretty, but it would be much prettier were it not for the \mathbb{Z} s in the first column. We have to carry these around because every non-empty space has at least one connected component.

The solution is to define a new homology $\tilde{H}_n(X)$ which agrees with $H_n(X)$ in positive degrees, and is missing a copy of \mathbb{Z} in the zeroth degree. There are three equivalent ways of doing this: one geometric, one algebraic, and one somewhere in between.

1. **Geometric:** Denoting the unique map $X \rightarrow \text{pt}$ by ϵ , one can define relative homology by

$$\tilde{H}_n(X) = \ker H_n(\epsilon).$$

2. **In between:** One can replace homology $H_n(X)$ by relative homology

$$\tilde{H}_n(X) = H_n(X, x),$$

where $x \in X$ is any point of x .

3. **Algebraic:** One can augment the singular chain complex $C_\bullet(X)$ by adding a copy of \mathbb{Z} in degree -1 , so that

$$\tilde{C}_n(X) = \begin{cases} C_n(X), & n \neq -1 \\ \mathbb{Z}, & n = -1. \end{cases}$$

Then one can define

$$\tilde{H}_n(X) = H_n(\tilde{C}_\bullet).$$

There is a more modern point of view, which is the following. In constructing the singular chain complex of our space X , we used the following composition.

$$\mathbf{Top} \xrightarrow{\text{Sing}} \mathbf{Set}_\Delta \xrightarrow{\mathcal{F}} \mathbf{Ab}_\Delta \xrightarrow{N} \mathbf{Ch}(\mathbf{Ab})$$

For many purposes, there is a more natural category than Δ to use: the category $\bar{\Delta}$, which includes the empty simplex $[-1]$. The functor **Sing** now has a component corresponding to (-1) -simplices:

$$\mathbf{Sing}(X)_{-1} = \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}}(\rho([-1]), X) = \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}}(\emptyset, X) = \{*\},$$

since the empty topological space is initial in **Top**. Passing through \mathcal{F} thus gives a copy of \mathbb{Z} as required. Thus, using $\bar{\Delta}$ instead of Δ gives the augmented singular chain complex.

These all have the desired effect, and which method one uses is a matter of preference. To see this, note the following.

8. Homology

- (1 \Leftrightarrow 2): Since the composition

$$\text{pt} \xrightarrow{x} X \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \gg \text{pt}$$

is a weak retract, the sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow S_n(\text{pt}) \longrightarrow S_n(X) \longrightarrow S_n(X, \{x\}) \longrightarrow 0$$

Proposition 200. Relative homology agrees with ordinary homology in degrees greater than 0, and in degree zero we have the relation

$$H_0(X) = \tilde{H}_0(X) \oplus \mathbb{Z}.$$

Proof. Trivial from algebraic definition. □

Many of our results for regular homology hold also for reduced homology.

Proposition 201. There is a long exact sequence for a pair of spaces

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{H}_{j+1}(X, A) & & \\ & \swarrow & & & \searrow & & \\ & & \delta & & & & \\ \tilde{H}_j(A) & \longrightarrow & \tilde{H}_j(X) & \longrightarrow & \tilde{H}_j(X, A) & & \\ & \swarrow & & & \searrow & & \\ & & \delta & & & & \\ \tilde{H}_{j-1}(A) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & & & & \end{array}$$

Proposition 202. We have a reduced Mayer-Vietoris sequence.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{H}_{n+1}(X) & & \\ & \swarrow & & & \searrow & & \\ & & \delta & & & & \\ \tilde{H}_n(X_1 \cap X_2) & \longrightarrow & \tilde{H}_n(X_1) \oplus \tilde{H}_n(X_2) & \longrightarrow & \tilde{H}_n(X) & & \\ & \swarrow & & & \searrow & & \\ & & \delta & & & & \\ \tilde{H}_{n-1}(X_1 \cap X_2) & \longrightarrow & \cdots & & & & \end{array}$$

Proposition 203. Let $\{(X_i, x_i)\}_{i \in I}$ be a set of pointed topological spaces such that each x_i has an open neighborhood $U_i \subset X_i$ of which it is a deformation retract. Then for any finite $E \subset I$ ¹ we have

$$\tilde{H}_n \left(\bigvee_{i \in I} X_i \right) \cong \bigoplus_{i \in E} \tilde{H}_n(X_i).$$

¹This finiteness condition is not actually necessary, but giving it here avoids a colimit argument.

Proof. We prove the case of two bouquet summands; the rest follows by induction. We know that

$$X_1 \vee X_2 = (X_1 \vee U_2) \cup (U_1 \vee X_2)$$

is an open cover. Thus, the reduced Mayer-Vietoris sequence of [Proposition 202](#) tells us that the following sequence is exact.

$$0 \longrightarrow \tilde{H}_n(X_1) \oplus \tilde{H}_n(X_2) \longrightarrow \tilde{H}_n(X) \longrightarrow 0$$

In particular, for $n > 0$, we find that the corresponding sequence on non-reduced homology is exact.

$$0 \longrightarrow H_n(X_1) \oplus H_n(X_2) \longrightarrow H_n(X) \longrightarrow 0$$

□

Definition 204 (good pair). A pair of spaces (X, A) is said to be a good pair if the following conditions are satisfied.

1. A is closed inside X .
2. There exists an open set U with $A \subset U$ such that A is a deformation retract of U .

$$A \hookrightarrow U \xrightarrow{r} A$$

Proposition 205. Let (X, A) be a good pair. Let $\pi: X \rightarrow X/A$ be the canonical projection. Then

$$\tilde{H}(X, A) \cong \tilde{H}_n(X/A) \quad \text{for all } n > 0.$$

Proof.

□

Theorem 206 (suspension isomorphism). Let (X, A) be a good pair. Then

$$H_n(\Sigma X, \Sigma A) \cong \tilde{H}_{n-1}(X, A), \quad \text{for all } n > 0.$$

8.7. Mapping degree

We have shown that

$$\tilde{H}_n(\mathbb{S}^m) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & n = m \\ 0, & n \neq m \end{cases}.$$

Thus, we may pick in each $H_n(\mathbb{S}^n)$ a generator μ_n . Let $f: \mathbb{S}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{S}^n$ be a continuous map. Then

$$H_n(f)(\mu_n) = d \mu_n, \quad \text{for some } d \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

8. Homology

Definition 207 (mapping degree). We call $d \in \mathbb{Z}$ as above the mapping degree of f , and denote it by $\deg(f)$.

Example 208. Consider the map

$$\omega: [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{S}^1; \quad t \mapsto e^{2\pi it}.$$

The 1-simplex ω generates the fundamental group $\pi_1(\mathbb{S}^1)$, so by the Hurewicz homomorphism ([Theorem 184](#)), the class $[\omega]$ generates $H_1(\mathbb{S}^1)$. We can think of $[\omega]$ as $1 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now consider the map

$$f_n: \mathbb{S}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{S}^1; \quad x \mapsto x^n.$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} H_1(f_n)(\omega) &= [f_n \circ \omega] \\ &= [e^{2\pi i n t}]. \end{aligned}$$

The naturality of the Hurewicz isomorphism ([Theorem 184](#)) tells us that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi_1(\mathbb{S}^1)_{\text{ab}} & \xrightarrow{\pi_1(f_n)_{\text{ab}}} & \pi_1(\mathbb{S}^1)_{\text{ab}} \\ h_{\mathbb{S}^1} \downarrow & & \downarrow h_{\mathbb{S}^1} \\ H_1(\mathbb{S}^1) & \xrightarrow{H_1(f_n)} & H_1(\mathbb{S}^1) \end{array}$$

8.8. CW Complexes

CW complexes are a class of particularly nicely-behaved topological spaces.

Definition 209 (cell). Let X be a topological space. We say that X is an n -cell if X is homeomorphic to \mathbb{R}^n . We call the number n the dimension of X .

Definition 210 (cell decomposition). A cell decomposition of a topological space X is a decomposition

$$X = \bigsqcup_{i \in I} X_i, \quad X_i \cong \mathbb{R}^{n_i}$$

where the disjoint union is of sets rather than topological spaces.

Definition 211 (CW complex). A Hausdorff topological space is known as a CW complex² if it satisfies the following conditions.

²[Axiom \(CW2\)](#) is called the *closure-finiteness* condition. This is the ‘C’ in CW complex. [Axiom \(CW3\)](#) says that X carries the *weak topology* and is responsible for the ‘W’.

(CW1) For every n -cell $\sigma \subset X$, there is a continuous map $\Phi_\sigma: \mathbb{D}^n \rightarrow X$ such that the restriction of Φ_σ to $\mathring{\mathbb{D}}^n$ is a homeomorphism

$$\Phi_\sigma|_{\mathring{\mathbb{D}}^n} \cong \sigma,$$

and Φ_σ maps $\mathbb{S}^{n-1} = \partial\mathbb{D}^n$ to the union of cells of dimension of at most $n - 1$.

(CW2) For every n -cell σ , the closure $\bar{\sigma} \subset X$ has a non-trivial intersection with at most finitely many cells of X .

(CW3) A subset $A \subset X$ is closed if and only if $A \cap \bar{\sigma}$ is closed for all cells $\sigma \in X$.

At this point, we define some terminology.

- The map Φ_σ is called the *characteristic map* of the cell σ .
- Its restriction $\Phi_\sigma|_{\mathbb{S}^{n-1}}$ is called the *attaching map*.

Example 212. Consider the unit interval $I = [0, 1]$. This has an obvious CW structure with two 0-cells and one 1-cell. It also has an CW structure with $n + 1$ 0-cells and n 1-cells. which looks like n intervals glued together at their endpoints.

However, we must be careful. Consider the cell decomposition of the interval with zero-cells

$$\sigma_k^0 = \frac{1}{k} \text{ for } k \in \mathbb{N}^{\geq 1}, \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_\infty^0 = 0$$

and one-cells

$$\sigma_k^1 = \left(\frac{1}{k}, \frac{1}{k+1} \right), \quad k \in \mathbb{N}^{\geq 1}.$$

At first glance, this looks like a CW decomposition; it certainly satisfies [Axiom \(CW1\)](#) and [Axiom \(CW2\)](#). However, consider the set

$$A = \{a_k \mid k \in \mathbb{N}^{\geq 1}\},$$

where

$$a_k = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{k} + \frac{1}{k+1} \right),$$

is the midpoint of the interval σ_k^1 . We have $A \cap \sigma_k^0 = \emptyset$ for all k , and $A \cap \sigma_k^1 = \{a_k\}$ for all k . In each case, $A \cap \bar{\sigma}_j^i$ is closed in σ_j^i . However, the set A is not closed in I , since it does not contain its limit point $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$.

Definition 213 (skeleton, dimension). Let X be a CW complex, and let

$$X^n = \bigcup_{\substack{\sigma \in X \\ \dim(\sigma) \leq n}} \sigma.$$

We call X^n the n -skeleton of X . If X is equal to its n -skeleton but not equal to its $(n - 1)$ -skeleton, we say that X is n -dimensional.

8. Homology

Note 214. **Axiom (CW3)** implies that X carries the direct limit topology, i.e. that

$$X \cong \varinjlim X^n.$$

Definition 215 (subcomplex, CW pair). Let X be a CW complex. A subspace $Y \subset X$ is a subcomplex if it has a cell decomposition given by cells of X such that for each $\sigma \subset Y$, we also have that $\bar{\sigma} \subset Y$.

We call such a pair (X, Y) a CW pair.

Fact 216. Let X and Y be CW complexes such that X is locally compact. Then $X \times Y$ is a CW complex.

Lemma 217. Let D be a subset of a CW complex such that for each cell $\sigma \subset X$, $D \cap \sigma$ consists of at most one point. Then D is discrete.

Corollary 218. Let X be a CW complex.

1. Every compact subset $K \subset X$ is contained in a finite union of cells.
2. The space X is compact if and only if it is a finite CW complex.
3. The space X is locally compact³ if and only if it is locally finite.⁴

Proof. It is clear that 1. \Rightarrow 2., since X is a subset of itself. Similarly, it is clear that 2. \Rightarrow 3., since \square

Corollary 219. If $f: K \rightarrow X$ is a continuous map from a compact space K to a CW complex X , then the image of K under f is contained in a finite skeleton. That is to say, f factors through some X^n .

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & & & K & \\ & & & & \nearrow \exists \tilde{f} & \downarrow f & \\ X^{n-1} & \hookrightarrow & X^n & \hookrightarrow & X^{n+1} & \hookrightarrow & \dots \hookrightarrow X \end{array}$$

Proposition 220. Let A be a subcomplex of a CW complex X . Then $X \times \{0\} \cup A \times [0, 1]$ is a strong deformation retract of $X \times [0, 1]$.

Lemma 221. Let X be a CW complex.

- For any subcomplex $A \subset X$, there is an open neighborhood U of A in X together with a strong deformation retract to A . In particular, for each skeleton X^n there is an open neighborhood U in X (as well as in X^{n+1}) of X^n such that X^n is a strong deformation retract of U .
- Every CW complex is paracompact, locally path-connected, and locally contractible.

³I.e. every point of X has a compact neighborhood.

⁴I.e. if every point has a neighborhood which is contained in only finitely many cells.

- Every CW complex is semi-locally 1-connected, hence possesses a univesal covering space.

Lemma 222. Let X be a CW complex. We have the following decompositions.

1.

$$X^n \setminus X^{n-1} = \coprod_{\sigma \text{ an } n\text{-cell}} \sigma \cong \coprod_{\sigma \text{ an } n\text{-cell}} \mathring{\mathbb{D}}^n.$$

2.

$$X^n / X^{n-1} \cong \bigvee_{\sigma \text{ an } n\text{-cell}} \mathbb{S}^n$$

Proof.

1. Since $X^n \setminus X^{n-1}$ is simply the union of all n -cells (which must by definition be disjoint), we have the first equality. The homeomorphism is simply because each n -cell is homeomorphic to the open n -ball.
2. For every n -cell σ , the characteristic map Φ_σ sends $\partial\Delta^n$ to the $(n-1)$ -skeleton.

□

8.9. Cellular homology

Lemma 223. For X a CW complex, we always have

$$H_q(X^n, X^{n-1}) \cong \tilde{H}_q(X^n / X^{n-1}) \cong \bigoplus_{\sigma \text{ an } n\text{-cell}} \tilde{H}_q(\mathbb{S}^n).$$

Proof. By [Lemma 221](#), (X^n, X^{n-1}) is a good pair. The first isomorphism then follows from [Proposition 205](#), and the second from [Lemma 222](#). □

Lemma 224. Consider the inclusion $i_n: X^n \hookrightarrow X$.

- The induced map

$$H_n(i_n): H_n(X^n) \rightarrow H_n(X)$$

is surjective.

- On the $(n+1)$ -skeleton we get an isomorphism

$$H_n(i_{n+1}): H_n(X^{n+1}) \cong H_n(X).$$

Proof. Consider the pair of spaces (X^{n+1}, X^n) . The associated long exact sequence tells us that the sequence

$$H_n(X^n) \longrightarrow H_n(X^{n+1}) \longrightarrow H_n(X^{n+1}, X^n)$$

Thus,

$$[\alpha] = \left[\sum_i \alpha^i i_n \circ \sigma \right]$$

□

Corollary 225. Let X and Y be CW complexes.

1. If $X^n \cong Y^n$, then $H_q(X) \cong H_q(Y)$ for all $q < n$.
2. If X has no q -cells, then $H_q(X) \cong 0$.
3. In particular, for an n -dimensional CW-complex X (Definition 213), $H_q(X) = 0$ for $q > n$.

Proof.

1. This follows immediately from Lemma 224.
- 2.

□

Definition 226 (cellular chain complex). Let X be a CW complex. The cellular chain complex of X is defined level-wise by

$$C_n(X) = H_n(X^n, X^{n-1}),$$

with boundary operator d_n given by the following composition

$$H_n(X^n, X^{n-1}) \xrightarrow{\delta} H_{n-1}(X^{n-1}) \xrightarrow{\varrho} H_{n-1}(X^{n-1}, X^{n-2})$$

where ϱ is induced by the projection

$$S_{n-1}(X^{n-1}) \rightarrow S_{n-1}(X^{n-1}, X^{n-2}).$$

This is a bona fide differential, since

$$d^2 = \varrho \circ \delta \circ \varrho \circ \delta,$$

and $\delta \circ \varrho$ is a composition in the long exact sequence on the pair (X^n, X^{n-1}) .

Theorem 227 (comparison of cellular and singular homology). Let X be a CW complex. Then there is an isomorphism

$$\Upsilon_n: H_n(C_\bullet(X), d) \cong H_n(X).$$

8. Homology

Example 228 (complex projective space). Consider the complex projective space $\mathbb{C}P^n$. We know that $\mathbb{C}P^0 = \text{pt}$, and from the homogeneous coordinates

$$[x_0 : \cdots : x_n]$$

on $\mathbb{C}P^n$, we have a decomposition

$$\mathbb{C}P^n \cong \mathbb{C}^n \sqcup \mathbb{C}P^{n-2}.$$

Inductively, we find a decomposition

$$\mathbb{C}P^n \cong \mathbb{C}^n \sqcup \mathbb{C}^{n-1} \sqcup \cdots \sqcup \mathbb{C}^0,$$

giving us a cell decomposition

$$\mathbb{C}P^{2n} \cong \mathbb{R}^{2n} \sqcup \mathbb{R}^{2n-2} \sqcup \cdots \sqcup \mathbb{R}^0.$$

This is a CW complex because

The cellular chain complex is as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 2n & & 2n-1 & & 2n-2 & & \cdots & & 1 & & 0 \\ \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} \end{array}$$

The differentials are all zero. Thus, we have

$$H_k(\mathbb{C}P^n) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & k = 2i, 0 \leq i \leq n \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Example 229 (real projective space). As in the complex case, appealing to homogeneous coordinates gives a cell decomposition

$$\mathbb{R}P^n \cong \mathbb{R}^n \sqcup \mathbb{R}^{n-1} \sqcup \cdots \sqcup \mathbb{R}^0.$$

The cellular chain complex is thus as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} n & & n-1 & & n-2 & & \cdots & & 1 & & 0 \\ \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} \end{array}$$

Unlike the complex case, we don't know how the differentials behave, so we can't calculate the homology directly.

8.10. Homology with coefficients

Definition 230 (homology with coefficients). Let G be an abelian group, and X a topological space. The singular chain complex of X with coefficients in G is the chain complex

$$S(X; G) = S(X) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} G.$$

The n th singular homology of X with coefficients in G is the n th homology

$$H_n(X; G) = H_n(S(X; G)).$$

We can relate homology with integral coefficients (i.e. standard homology) and homology with coefficients in G .

Theorem 231 (topological universal coefficient theorem for homology). For every topological space X there is a short exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow H_n(X) \otimes G \hookrightarrow H_n(X; G) \twoheadrightarrow \text{Tor}(H_{n-1}(X), G) \longrightarrow 0.$$

Furthermore, this sequence splits non-canonically, telling us that

$$H_n(X; G) \cong (H_n(X) \otimes G) \oplus \text{Tor}_1^{\mathbb{Z}}(H_{n-1}(X), G).$$

Proof. REF to be updated with UCT. □

8.11. The topological Künneth formula

Recall that the Künneth formula (Section 3.13) tells us that the following sequence is short exact.

TODO

It turns out that we can relate $H_p(X) \otimes H_q(Y)$ and $H_{p+q}(X \times Y)$. We first define a so-called *homology cross product*

$$\times: S_p(X) \otimes S_q(Y) \rightarrow S_{p+q}(X \times Y),$$

and then show that it descends to homology.

Our goal is to find a way of making a p -simplex in X and a q -simplex in Y into a $(p+q)$ -simplex in $X \times Y$. At least in the case that one of p or q is equal to zero, it is clear what to do, since the Cartesian product of a p -simplex with a zero-simplex is again a p -simplex. In more general cases, however, we have to be clever. The strategy is to write down a list of properties that we would like our homology cross product to have, and then show that there exists a unique map satisfying them.

8. Homology

Lemma 232. We can define a homomorphism

$$\times: S_p(X) \otimes S_q(Y) \rightarrow S_{p+q}(X \times Y), \quad p, q \geq 0,$$

with the following properties.

1. For all points $x_0 \in X$ viewed as zero-chains in $S_0(X)$ and all $\beta: \Delta^q \rightarrow Y$, we have

$$(x_0 \times \beta)(t_0, \dots, t_q) = (x_0, \beta(t_0, \dots, t_q));$$

conversely, for $\alpha \in S_p(X)$ and $y_0 \in Y$, we have

$$(\alpha \times y_0)(t_0, \dots, t_p) = (\alpha(t_0, \dots, t_p), y_0).$$

2. The map \times is natural in the sense that the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S_p(X) \otimes S_q(Y) & \xrightarrow{\times} & S_{p+q}(X \times Y) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ S_p(X') \otimes S_q(Y') & \xrightarrow{\times} & S_{p+q}(X' \times Y') \end{array}$$

commutes.

3. The map \times satisfies the Leibniz rule in the sense that

$$\partial(\alpha \times \beta) = \partial(\alpha) \times \beta + (-1)^p \alpha \times \partial(\beta).$$

Proof. As a warm up, let us work out some hypothetical consequences of our formulae, in the special case that $X = \Delta^p$ and $Y = \Delta^q$. In this case, we have

$$\text{id}_{\Delta^p} \in S_p(\Delta^p), \quad \text{id}_{\Delta^q} \in S_q(\Delta^q),$$

so we can take the homology cross product $\text{id}_{\Delta^p} \times \text{id}_{\Delta^q} \in S_{p+q}(\Delta^p \times \Delta^q)$. By the Leibniz rule, we have

$$\partial(\text{id}_{\Delta^p} \times \text{id}_{\Delta^q}) = \partial(\text{id}_{\Delta^p}) \times \text{id}_{\Delta^q} + (-1)^p \Delta^p \times \partial(\text{id}_{\Delta^q}).$$

This is now a perfectly well-defined element of $S_{p+q-1}(\Delta^p \times \Delta^q)$, which we will give the nickname R .

A trivial computation shows that $\partial R = 0$, so there exists a $c \in S_{p+q}(\Delta^p \times \Delta^q)$ with $\partial c = R$. We choose some such c and define $\text{id}_{\Delta^p} \times \text{id}_{\Delta^q} = c$.

We now use the trick of expressing some $\alpha: \Delta^p \rightarrow X$ as $S_p(\alpha)(\text{id}_{\Delta^p})$. Then

$$\alpha \times \beta = S_p(\alpha)(\text{id}_{\Delta^p}) \times S_q(\beta)(\text{id}_{\Delta^q}).$$

But then the naturality forces our hand; chasing $\text{id}_{\Delta^p} \otimes \text{id}_{\Delta^q}$ around the naturality square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S_p(\Delta^p) \otimes S_q(\Delta^q) & \xrightarrow{\times} & S_{p+q}(\Delta^p \times \Delta^q) \\ S_p(\alpha) \otimes S_q(\beta) \downarrow & & \downarrow S_{p+q}(\alpha, \beta) \\ S_p(X) \otimes S_p(Y) & \xrightarrow{\times} & S_{p+q}(X \times Y) \end{array}$$

tells us that

$$\begin{aligned} S_{p+q}(\alpha, \beta)(\text{id}_{\Delta^p} \times \text{id}_{\Delta^q}) &= S_p(\alpha)(\text{id}_{\Delta^p}) \times S_q(\beta)(\text{id}_{\Delta^q}) \\ S_{p+q}(\alpha, \beta)(c) &= \alpha \times \beta. \end{aligned}$$

□

Theorem 233 (topological Künneth formula). For any topological spaces X and Y , we have the following short exact sequence.

$$0 \rightarrow \bigoplus_{p+q=n} H_p(X) \otimes H_q(Y) \hookrightarrow H_n(X \times Y) \twoheadrightarrow \bigoplus_{p+q=n-1} \text{Tor}(H_p(X), H_q(Y)) \rightarrow 0$$

8.12. The Eilenberg-Steenrod axioms

Denote by T the functor

$$T: \mathbf{Pair} \rightarrow \mathbf{Pair}; \quad (X, A) \mapsto (A, \emptyset); \quad (f: (X, A) \rightarrow (Y, B)) \mapsto f|_A.$$

Definition 234 (homology theory). Let A be an abelian group. A homology theory with coefficients in A is a sequence of functors

$$H_n: \mathbf{Pair} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}, \quad n \geq 0$$

together with natural transformations

$$\delta: H_n \Rightarrow H_{n-1} \circ T$$

satisfying the following conditions.

1. **Homotopy:** Homotopic maps induce the same maps on homology; that is,

$$f \sim g \implies H_n(f) = H_n(g) \quad \text{for all } f, g, n.$$

2. **Excision:** If (X, A) is a pair with $U \subset X$ such that $\bar{U} \subset \mathring{A}$, then the inclusion $i: (X \setminus U, A \setminus U) \hookrightarrow (X, A)$ induces an isomorphism

$$H_n(i): H_n(X \setminus U, A \setminus U) \cong H_n(X, A)$$

8. Homology

for all n .

3. **Dimension:** We have

$$H_n(\text{pt}) = \begin{cases} A, & n = 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

4. **Additivity:** If $X = \coprod_{\alpha} X_{\alpha}$ is a disjoint union of topological spaces, then

$$H_n(X) = \bigoplus_{\alpha} H_n(X_{\alpha}).$$

5. **Exactness:** Each pair (X, A) induces a long exact sequence on homology.

We have seen that singular homology satisfies all of these axioms, and hence is a homology theory.

9. Cohomology

9.1. Axiomatic description of a cohomology theory

There are dual axioms to the Eilenberg-Steenrod axioms (introduced in [Definition 234](#)) which govern cohomology theories.

Definition 235 (cohomology theory). Let A be an abelian group. A cohomology theory with coefficients in A is a series of functors

$$H^n: \mathbf{Pair}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}; \quad n \geq 0$$

together with natural transformations

$$\partial: H^n \circ T^{\text{op}} \Rightarrow H^{n+1}$$

satisfying the following conditions.

1. **Homotopy:** If f and g are homotopic maps of pairs, then $H^n(f) = H^n(g)$ for all n .
2. **Excision:** If (X, A) is a pair with $U \subset X$ such that $\bar{U} \subset \mathring{A}$, then the inclusion $i: (X \setminus U, A \setminus U) \hookrightarrow (X, A)$ induces an isomorphism

$$H^n(i): (X, A) \cong H^n(X \setminus U, A \setminus U)$$

for all n .

3. **Dimension:** We have

$$H^n(\text{pt}) = \begin{cases} A, & n = 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

4. **Additivity:** If $X = \coprod_{\alpha} X_{\alpha}$ is a disjoint union of topological spaces, then

$$H^n(X) = \prod_{\alpha} H^n(X_{\alpha}).$$

5. **Exactness:** Each pair (X, A) induces a long exact sequence on cohomology.

9.2. Singular cohomology

Definition 236 (singular cohomology). Let G be an abelian group. The singular cochain complex of X with coefficients in G is the cochain complex

$$S^\bullet(X; G) = \text{Hom}(S_\bullet, G)$$

We will denote the evaluation map $\text{Hom}(A, G) \otimes A \rightarrow G$ using angle brackets $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. In this form, it is usually called the *Kroenecker pairing*.

Lemma 237. Let C_\bullet be a chain complex. The evaluation map (also known as the *Kroenecker pairing*)

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : C^n(X; G) \otimes C_n(X) \rightarrow G$$

descends to a map on homology

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : H^n(C^\bullet) \otimes H_n(C_\bullet) \rightarrow G.$$

Proof. Let $\alpha : C_n \rightarrow G \in C^n$ be a cocycle and $a \in C_n$ a cycle, and let $db \in C_n$ be a boundary. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \alpha, a + db \rangle &= \langle \alpha, a \rangle + \langle \alpha, db \rangle \\ &= \langle \alpha, a \rangle + \langle \delta \alpha, b \rangle \\ &= \langle \alpha, a \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, if $\delta \beta \in C^n$ is a cocycle, then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \alpha + \delta \beta, a \rangle &= \langle \alpha, a \rangle + \langle \delta \beta, a \rangle \\ &= \langle \alpha, a \rangle + \langle \beta, da \rangle \\ &= \langle \alpha, a \rangle \end{aligned}$$

□

Via \otimes -hom adjunction, we get a map

$$\kappa : H^n(C^\bullet) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(H_n(C_\bullet), G).$$

Theorem 238 (universal coefficient theorem for singular cohomology). Let X be a topological space. There is a split exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{Ext}(H_{n-1}(X), G) \hookrightarrow H^n(X; G) \twoheadrightarrow \text{Hom}(H_n(X), G) \longrightarrow 0$$

Example 239. We have seen (in [Example 228](#)) that the homology of $\mathbb{C}P^n$ is

$$H_k(\mathbb{C}P^n) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & 0 \leq k \leq 2n, k \text{ even}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Thus, for $0 \leq k \leq n$, k even, we find

$$\begin{aligned} H^k(\mathbb{C}P^n; \mathbb{Z}) &\cong \text{Ext}^1(0, \mathbb{Z}) \oplus \text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \\ &\cong \mathbb{Z}. \end{aligned}$$

For k odd with $0 \leq k \leq n$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} H^k(\mathbb{C}P^n; \mathbb{Z}) &\cong \text{Ext}^1(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \oplus \text{Hom}(0, \mathbb{Z}) \\ &\cong 0. \end{aligned}$$

For $k > n$, we get $H^k(\mathbb{C}P^n; \mathbb{Z}) = 0$.

9.3. The cap product

The Kroenecker pairing gives us a natural evaluation map

$$S^n(X) \otimes S_n(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z},$$

allowing an n -cochain to eat an n -chain. A cochain of order q cannot directly act on a chain of degree $n > q$, but we can split such a chain up into a singular q -simplex, on which our cochain can act, and a singular $n - q$ -simplex, which is along for the ride.

Definition 240 (front, rear face). Let $a: \Delta^n \rightarrow X$ be a singular n -simplex, and let $0 \leq q \leq n$.

- The $(n - q)$ -dimensional front face of a is given by

$$F^{n-q}(a) = \Delta^{n-q} \xrightarrow{i} \Delta^{tn} \xrightarrow{a} X ,$$

where i is induced by the inclusion

$$\{0, \dots, n - q\} \hookrightarrow \{1, \dots, n\}; \quad k \mapsto k.$$

- The q -dimensional rear face of a is given by

$$R^q(a) = \Delta^q \xrightarrow{r} \Delta^n \xrightarrow{a} X ,$$

9. Cohomology

where r is the map

$$\{0, \dots, q\} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, n\}; \quad k \mapsto n - q + k.$$

The cap product will be a map

$$\frown: S^q(X) \otimes S_n(X) \rightarrow S_{n-q}(X); \quad \alpha \otimes a \mapsto F^{n-q}(a) \langle \alpha, R^q(a) \rangle.$$

However, we will want to generalize slightly, to arbitrary coefficient systems and relative homology.

Definition 241 (cap product). The cap product is the map

$$\frown: S^q(X, A; R) \otimes S_n(X, A; R) \rightarrow S_{n-q}(X; R); \quad \alpha \otimes a \otimes r \mapsto F^{n-q}(a) \otimes \langle \alpha, R^q(a) \rangle r.$$

Of course, we need to check that this is well-defined, i.e. that for $b \in S_n(A) \subset S_n(X)$, we have $\alpha \frown b = 0$. We compute

$$\alpha \frown b = F^{n-1}(b) \otimes \langle \alpha, R^q(b) \rangle.$$

Since $b \in S_n(A)$, we certainly have that $R^q(b) \in S_n(A)$. But then $\langle \alpha, R^q(b) \rangle = 0$ by definition of relative cohomology.

Lemma 242. The cap product obeys the Leibniz rule, in the sense that

$$\partial(\alpha \frown (a \otimes r)) = (\delta\alpha) \frown (a \otimes r) + (-1)^q \alpha \frown (\partial a \otimes r).$$

Proposition 243. The cup product descends to a map on homology; that is, we get a map

$$\frown: H^q(X, A; R) \otimes H_n(X, A; R) \rightarrow H_{n-q}(X; R); \quad [\alpha \otimes a \otimes r] \mapsto [F^{n-q}(a) \otimes \langle \alpha, R^q(a) \rangle r].$$